ISLAMIC SCIENCE
AN ILLUSTRATED STUDY

Seyyed Hossein Nasr

With photographs by Roland Michaud
Islamic Science
An Illustrated Study
Islamic Science
An Illustrated Study

Seyyed Hossein Nasr
photographs by Roland Michaud

World of Islam Festival
Publishing Company Ltd
Copyright for photographs or figures other than those by Roland Michaud is the property of the photographers or designers listed in the notes and figures at the end of the book.
Other works by the author in European languages


# Contents

List of Illustrations                      viii  
Transliteration                           xii  
Preface                                    xiii

**Part One**  The General Background  
Chapter I  Islam and the Rise of the Islamic Sciences  1  
Chapter II  The Islamic Educational System  3  

**Part Two**  The Islamic Sciences: The Qualitative Study of the Universe  
Chapter III  Cosmology, Cosmography and Geography  25  
Chapter IV  Natural History: Geology – Mineralogy – Botany – Zoology  27  

**Part Three**  The Cosmos and Its Mathematical Study  
Chapter V  Mathematics  49  
Chapter VI  Astronomy and Astrology  73  
Chapter VII  Physics  75  

**Part Four**  The Applied Sciences  
Chapter VIII  Medicine and Pharmacology  91  
Chapter IX  Alchemy and Other Occult Sciences  135  
Chapter X  Agriculture and Irrigation  151  

**Part Five**  Man in the Universe  
Chapter XI  Man and the Natural Environment  153  
Chapter XII  Man in the Cosmic Order  193  

Notes to Illustrations                    209  
Glossary                                  225  
Select Bibliography                       227  
Index                                      235
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Plate</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Students studying the Quran with a master in Afghanistan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>The Qarawiyyin Mosque and School, Fez, Morocco.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Interior of the Gawharshad Mosque and School in Mashhad, Iran.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A general view of Shir-dar madrasah on Registan Square in Samarkand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Miniature depicting a traditional scene of instruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>General view of Bayazid II Kültüye – a university complex consisting of mosque, madrasah and hospital – in Edirne, Turkey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Osmania Hospital, Hyderabad, Deccan, India.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Miniature showing students studying astronomy with their teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>Inside a Sufi ḥā녀qāḥ.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>A miniature image of the horse of the Archangel Gabriel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>The nocturnal ascent (al-mi’rāj) of the Holy Prophet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>The Angel of Death, Izrā’il.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>The Ka’bah at the centre of the inhabitable world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Spain and North Africa according to the map of al-Istakhri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>15a and 15b</td>
<td>The Persian Gulf according to the map of al-Istakhri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>The province of Fars according to the map of al-Istakhri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Western Asia and the Eastern Mediterranean according to the map of Ibn Hawqal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Central Asia and Transoxiana according to the map of Ibn Hawqal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>The Muslim lands of Western Asia according to the map of Kāshgarli Maḥmūd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>20a</td>
<td>An Ottoman compass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>20b</td>
<td>A Syrian compass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>20c</td>
<td>A late Persian compass.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Map of America and West Africa according to Piri Ra’is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Aristotle teaching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>The opening page of the treatise on simples (drugs) by Ibn al-Bayṭâr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>An illustration of a variety of sorrel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>An illustration of an anthropomorphous flower from a Persian botanical treatise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>Vine from a Persian botanical treatise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>An illustration of the iris and white lily.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>The tapping of a balsam tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>The lion and the jackal from the Kalila wa Dimnah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Elephants from the Kalila wa Dimnah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>Owls from the Kalila wa Dimnah.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
List of Illustrations

Plate 34. Birds of India from the Bābur-nāmah.
Plate 35. A buzzard by Maňṣūr.
Plate 36. A partridge by Muhammad ‘Ālim.
Plate 37. A hunting hawk.
Plate 38. Scorpions from a treatise on natural history, the Ikhāniyār-i bādī‘i of ‘Ali ibn al-Ḥusayn, Zayn al-‘Aṭṭār.
Plates 39 and 40. An anatomical study of the horse.
Plate 41. An anatomical study of the horse.
Plate 42. The Ikhwān al-Ṣafī (Brethren of Purity).
Plate 43. The opening page to the commentary on the Elements of Euclid by Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī.
Plate 44. Colour, form and geometry in Islamic art.
Plate 45. The use of geometry to depict the spatial and temporal aspects of cosmic reality.
Plate 46. An instrument for finding the direction of the qiblah; also used as a sundial.
Plate 47. The constellations ‘The Little Bear’, ‘The Great Bear’ and ‘The Dragon’.
Plate 48. The constellation ‘Perseus’.
Plate 49. Aries.
Plate 50. Taurus.
Plate 51. Gemini.
Plate 52. Cancer.
Plate 53. Leo.
Plate 54. Virgo.
Plate 55. Libra.
Plate 56. Scorpio.
Plate 57. Sagittarius.
Plate 58. Capricorn.
Plate 59. Aquarius.
Plate 60. Pisces.
Plate 61. A figure with many arms representing the power of one of the planets.
Plate 62. Diagram by al-Birūnī showing eclipses of the moon.
Plate 63. The deferent and the ecliptic.
Plate 64. The opening page of the Zīj of Ulugh Beg.
Plate 65. Taqī al-Dīn and other astronomers working in Istanbul.
Plates 66 and 67. Two views of the Jai Singh Observatory, Jaipur, India.
Plates 68 and 69. Two views of the Jai Singh Observatory, Delhi, India.
Plate 70. A man determining the time from a sundial in Morocco.
Plate 71. A water clock from Morocco.
Plate 72. A sundial from Persia.
Plates 73, 74, 75, 76, 77 and 78. Astrolabes from various parts of the Islamic world.
Plate 79. A contemporary master astrolabe maker of Isfahan.
Plate 80. Celestial globe (not spherical astrolabe).
Plates 81 and 82. Wooden Turkish quadrants.
Plate 83. An astronomer observing a meteor with a quadrant.
Plate 84. Astronomers working with an armillary sphere.
Plate 85. The horoscope of the Persian Qajar king Fath ‘Ali Shāh.
Plate 86. Page from an astrological treatise describing the influences of the various houses.
Plate 87. Page from an astrological treatise describing the influence of the various houses.
Plate 88. The nine heavens of Islamic astronomy.
Plate 89. A mechanical device from al-Jazari.
Plates 90, 91, 92 and 93. Various mechanical devices from al-Jazari.
Plate 94. A mechanical device from a Persian encyclopaedia of the sciences.
Plate 95. The interior of a Seljuk hospital.
Plate 96. Inside a bath-house in Aleppo.
Plate 97. Inside a traditional bath-house.
Plate 98. The interior of a Persian bath-house in Kerman.
Plates 99, 100, 101, 102 and 103. Diagrams from various treatises on anatomy.
Plate 104. Anatomy of the eye.
Plate 105. A patient with haemorrhoids being treated.
Plate 106. A dislocated shoulder being set.
Plate 107. A dentist at work.
Plate 108. The physician, ‘Abdallāh ibn Bukhtishū’.
Plate 109. The minor circulation of the blood according to Ibn al-Nafis.
Plate 110. Dioscorides handing over the fabulous mandragora to one of his disciples.
Plate 111. Materia medica used in contemporary Islamic medicine.
List of Illustrations

Page

202  Plate 112. 18th-century alchemical retort by Josiah Wedgwood.
203  Plate 113. Contemporary alchemical apparatus from Persia.
205  Plate 114. A contemporary alchemist at work.
207  Plate 115. Instruments used for geology.
211  Plate 116. The Nilometer in Rawada Island at Fustat, near Cairo.
211  Plate 117. One of the oldest surviving man-made reservoirs in the Islamic world.
212  Plate 118. A reservoir near the city of Marrakesh.
213  Plate 119. A device to lift water from a well in India.
214-15  Plates 120, 121 and 122. The qandis system - underground water channels used in dry areas.
215  Plate 123. An open irrigation canal joined to a qandis system.
216  Plate 124. View of the River Zayandrud flowing through Isfahan.
217  Plate 125. The internal water distribution system, for private dwellings, in the traditional city of Fes in Morocco.
218  Plate 126. A man being encouraged to cultivate the soil.
219  Plate 127. A small water-wheel driven by a camel, in Afghan Turkistan.
220  Plate 128. A simple cotton mill driven by a blindfolded cow, being urged on by the farmer.
220  Plate 129. The traditional method of threshing wheat, in Fars Province, Persia.
229  Plate 130. Human habitat completely integrated into its natural environment.
230  Plate 131. A general view of the city of Kashan.
230  Plate 132. A general view of the city of Yazd.
232  Plates 133 and 134. Windmills in Khurasan.
238  Plate 135. Man and the macrocosm.

Figure 1. Verses from the Holy Quran concerning knowledge.

Figure 1a. Allah! There is no God save him; the Alive, the Eternal. Neither slumber nor sleep overtakest Him. To Him belongeth whatsoever is in the heavens and whatsoever is in the earth. Who is he that intercedeth with Him save by His leave? He knoweth that which is in front of them and that which is behind them, while they encompass nothing of His knowledge save what He will. His throne includeth the heavens and the earth, and He is never weary of preserving them. He is the Sublime, the Tremendous.

Figure 1b. Allah is the Light of the heavens and the earth. The similitude of his light is as a niche wherein is a lamp. The lamp is as the it were a shining star. (This lamp) is kindled from a blessed tree, an olive neither of the East nor of the West, whose oil would almost glw forth (of itself) though no fire touched it. Light upon light. Allah guideth unto His light whom He will. And Allah speaketh to mankind in allegories for Allah is Knower of all things.

Figure 1c. Are those who know equal with those who know not? But only men of understanding will pay heed.

Figure 1d. We shall show them our portents on the horizons and within themselves until it be manifest unto them that it is the Truth.

Figure 2. Sayings of the Holy Prophet pertaining to knowledge.

Figure 2a. The Holy Prophet has said: 'The quest of knowledge is obligatory for every Muslim'.

Figure 2b. The Holy Prophet has said: 'Verily the men of knowledge are the inheritors of the prophets'.

Figure 2c. The Holy Prophet has said: 'Seek knowledge from the cradle to the grave'.

Figure 3. Scheme depicting the transmission of science and learning from the civilizations of Antiquity to the Islamic world.

Figure 4a. The classification of the sciences according to the lḥāda l’-l’ulamā’ l-Fārābī.

Figures 4b and 4c. Two different classifications of the sciences according to the Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Fārābī’s al-‘Uṣūl by Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad al-ʿAmuli.

Figure 5. A general view of the inner courtyard of al-Azhar University, Cairo.

Figures 6 and 7. Master physician (possibly Ibn Sīnā) teaching medicine.

Figure 8. A figure purported to be Ibn Sīnā (Avicenna) teaching a group of students.

Figures 9a and 9b. (a) The horizontal and (b) the vertical cross-section of the Maragha Observatory based on recent excavations by Azerabadegan University, Tabriz, Persia.

Figure 10. The macrocosmic deployment of the Divine Names in their correspondence with cosmological and astrological states and signs, according to Ibn ‘Arabi.

Figure 11. The correspondence between the Prophets, the Imāms and the cosmic hierarchy according to Sayyid Haydar al-Āmulī.

Figure 12. The cosmic hierarchy according to the Epistles of the lḥwān al-Ṣafā’ī.

Figure 13. The correspondence between the elements, the astrological signs, the parts of the human body and the letters of the Arabic alphabet according to Shams al-Dīn al-Būnī.

Figures 14 and 15. Map of the world and the seven climes according to al-Bīrūnī.

Figure 16. A map of Kerman and its vicinity.

Figure 17. A map of Palestine, Syria and the Lebanon.

Figure 18. Europe and North Africa according to Piri Raʾīs.

Figure 19. An illustration of the thistle.

Figure 20. Cosmological and magical schemes relating Quranic verses to the symbolism of numbers according to Shams al-Dīn al-Būnī.

Figure 21. Geometric and numerical patterns used as the basis for the construction of various devices and instruments.

Figure 22. The development of the Arabic numeral.
List of Illustrations

Figure 23. Magic square of 36 squares.

Figure 24. Steel compass made for the Persian king Shâh 'Abbâs.

Figure 25. Rectangle related to the fifth postulate of Euclid.

Figure 26. Final page of al-Tûsî's commentary on the Elements of Euclid.

Figure 27. The solution of an algebraic problem by Khayyâm.

Figure 28. A flute player. From an Arabic treatise on music.

Figures 29, 30 and 31. Pages from the section on music of the Persian encyclopedia Durrat al-tâj of Qâlib al-Din al-Shirāzī.

Figure 32. The division of the chord from a treatise on music.

Figure 33. Ars sine scientia nihil.

Figure 34a. One of the methods of finding the direction of the qiblah, by al-Birûnî.

Figure 34b. On finding the direction of the qiblah according to Sardâr Kâbuli.

Figure 35. Miniature depicting the Holy Prophet preaching against intercalation.

Figure 36. The constellation 'The Dragon'.

Figure 37. The constellation 'Hercules'.

Figure 38. The constellation 'The Dragon'.

Figure 39. The constellation 'Cassiopeia'.

Figures 40 and 41. Diagrams by al-Birûnî and al-Ţûsî showing eclipses of the sun and the moon.

Figure 42. Planetary model by al-Birûnî.

Figures 43, 44, 45 and 46. Various models for planetary motion by Nasîr al-Din al-Ţûsî.

Figure 47. A page from the astronomical section of the Persian encyclopedia Durrat al-tâj of Qâlib al-Din al-Shirâzî.

Figures 48a, b, c, d and e. The later development of planetary theory by Nasîr al-Din, Qâlib al-Din and Ibn al-Shâtîr.

Figure 49. A painting of the reconstruction of the Samarqand Observatory.

Figure 50. A sketch of the Samarqand Observatory.

Figure 51. Remnants of the Samarqand Observatory discovered in recent excavations.

Figure 52. A sundial from Morocco.

Figure 53. A sundial from Old Cairo, Egypt.

Figures 54, 55 and 56. Description of the astrolabe according to al-Birûnî.

Figures 57 and 58. The universal instrument of Jâbir ibn Aflâh.

Figures 59 and 60. Front and back of an astrolabe with gears.

Figure 61. Front of a Persian nocturnal, a mechanical instrument to show the direction of the stars.

Figure 62. A page from an astrological treatise.

Figure 63. A chart determining astrological influences on various daily actions.

Figure 64. The nine heavens of Islamic astronomy.

Figures 65a and 65b. The anatomy of the eye according to Ibn al-Haytham.

Figure 66. Alhazen's problem.

Figures 67a and 67b. Sketch of the balance made by al-Birûnî.

Figures 68 and 69. The balance of al-Khâzînî.

Figure 70. A page from a manuscript on mechanical devices.

Figures 71 and 72. From a Maghribi work on making canons.

Figures 73a and 73b. A device to make a canon, from Mogul India.

Figure 74. Vapour rising from a Turkish bath-house in Istanbul.

Figure 75a. The four natures and humours.

Figure 75b. The basic organs of the body in relation to the humours, qualities, natures and seasons according to the Jâbirean corpus.

Figure 76. Illustration depicting Galen's ideas concerning the spirits.

Figures 77 and 78. Diagrams from various treatises on anatomy.

Figure 79. Diagram from a treatise on anatomy.

Figure 80. Anatomy of the eye.

Figure 81. Surgical instruments from al-Zâhrâwî.

Figure 82. A selection of Islamic surgical instruments.

Figure 83. A Caesarean operation.

Figure 84. A dislocated hip being set.

Figure 85. A chicken being sacrificed to cure a snakebite.

Figure 86. The four elements, natures and cosmic and alchemical principles.

Figure 87. Two stills and a condenser. Probably 18th century.

Figure 88. A page from a treatise on magic ('isîm' (talisman)).

Figure 89. One of the oldest surviving man-made reservoirs in the Islamic world.

Figure 90. A giant noria wheel from Hama, Syria.

Figure 91. View of the River Zayandurud flowing through Isfahan.

Figure 92. A small water-wheel driven by a camel, in Afghan Turkistan.

Figure 93. Details of a tower constructed to catch the wind and to ventilate the traditional house.

Figure 94. The traditional architecture of a water well in the dry regions of Persia.
Transliteration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Letter</th>
<th>Transliteration</th>
<th>Short Vowels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ع</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>ٍ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ة</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>ُ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ث</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>ِ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ج</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>ٌ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ح</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>د</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>ٍ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ر</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ز</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>س</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ش</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>ُ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ص</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>ُ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ض</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ت</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ج</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ه</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>و</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ي</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ق</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>َ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Long Vowels:
- َٰ (ā)
- ُع (ū)
- ِى (i)

Diphthongs:
- َْو (iīy)
- ُْو (uww)

Persian Letters:
- َْب (p)
- َْج (ch)
- َْض (zh)
- َْط (g)
In the Name of God Most Merciful
and Compassionate

Preface

Islamic science, which is taken in this work to include disciplines concerned with the study of the cosmos, embraces a wide spectrum of intellectual activity, from the study of plants to algebra, carried out over more than a millennium by many races and peoples spread over the middle belt of the earth from Spain and Morocco to eastern Asia. Because of its traditional character, this science is not limited in scope or meaning as is the modern discipline with the same name. The Islamic sciences, even in the more limited sense considered here, which excludes the religious and many branches of the philosophical sciences, are concerned at once with the world of nature, of the psyche and of mathematics. Because of their symbolic quality, they are also intimately related to metaphysics, gnosis and art, and because of their practical import they touch upon the social and economic life of the community and the Divine Law which governs Islamic society. Considering these factors, it becomes evident with what a vast subject the student of Islamic science is faced and why as yet no complete study of the subject has been carried out.

Its extensive influence upon the Latin and Renaissance West has, since the eighteenth century, caused numerous studies in European languages to be devoted to the various facets of Islamic science, studies of which a complete bibliography has been made for the first time only recently (S. H. Nasr with the collaboration of W. Chittick, An Annotated Bibliography of Islamic Science). To this must be added the not inconsiderable amount of writings in the Islamic languages themselves. Nevertheless, a great deal of the subject remains unknown, and throughout the libraries of the world there are numerous treatises on the Islamic sciences which have never received any attention.

Basing themselves on the available results of research carried out so far, several scholars have attempted to write histories of Islamic science, including the classical reference work of G. Sarton, An Introduction to the History of Science, A. Miéli, La science arabe et son rôle dans l'évolution scientifique mondiale, and more recently the works of F. Sezgin and M. Ullmann. There is also the work of S. H. Nasr, Science and Civilization in Islam which combines a historical and morphological study of Islamic science with selections of actual Islamic scientific texts rendered into English.

The present work is, however, the first ever written on Islamic science in which the study and analysis of the texts is combined with illustrations from sources throughout the Islamic world. It is written on the occasion of the major Festival of the World of Islam in London, one of whose main features is the first exhibition ever organized of
Islamic science anywhere and being held at the Science Museum of that city. It is written with the hope not only of providing a complete picture, to the extent possible, of Islamic science with appropriate illustrations, but also of complementing the exhibition with whose organization we have also been closely associated.

The perspective of this work, as of our other writings, is that of the Islamic tradition. We have sought to present the Islamic sciences as they have been viewed and still continue to be viewed to a large extent by those who have lived, breathed and died, and continue to do so, within the Islamic Universe and who have belonged, and still belong, to this Universe through both their hearts and their minds. The work is thus in many ways a complement to Science and Civilization in Islam, which is also written in the same perspective but with literary rather than visual illustrations.

We wish to thank M. Roland Michaud, the perspicacious and gifted French photographer, who is responsible for most of the photographs, and also Mr Robert Harding, the well-known and experienced British photographer, for their assistance to us in preparing most of the illustrated material for the book. We also wish to thank Mr Haddad-Adel who helped us with locating many manuscripts, Dr William Chittick and Mr Peter Wilson who read over the text and made helpful suggestions, Mr Colin Larkin whose talents are responsible for the artistic lay-out of the book, Mr John Knight-Smith who helped in many stages of the work, Mrs Daphne Buckmaster who edited the work and Mrs I. Hakemi who prepared the typescript for publication. Finally, it is necessary to mention that the whole plan for this and other books which complement it in the World of Islam Festival Series was originally conceived by the Director of the Festival, Mr Paul Keeler. Without his aid the work for this volume could not have been achieved.

Seyyed Hossein Nasr
Tehran
Shawwâl, 1395
October, 1975
Part One
The General Background
Chapter I
Islam and the Rise of the Islamic Sciences

No understanding of the Islamic sciences is possible without a comprehension of Islam itself, the life-giving force of a vast civilization one of whose fruits is the sciences. These sciences did not come into being accidentally among peoples who happened to be Muslim but were produced in the form that they were produced because those who brought them into being were Muslims and breathed within an Islamic universe.

The Islamic revelation, like all major manifestations of the Divine Logos, not only produced a religion in the sense of an ethical and social code but also transformed a segment of the cosmos and the minds of those who have lived within that cosmic sector. The phenomena which formed the subject matter of the Islamic sciences as well as the minds of the men who studied these phenomena have always been determined by a particular spiritual 'style' and transformed by a special type of grace (barakah) issuing directly from the Quranic revelation.¹ No serious study of the Islamic sciences can thus be carried out without some reference, no matter how brief, to the principles of Islam and the conditions created in time and space by Islam for the cultivation of the sciences.²

Islam, this last revelation of the Eternal and Unique Truth in the present cycle of human history, brought a message which encompasses all of human life, both what man does and what he makes. But before being concerned with doing and making, Islam is most of all concerned with what man is, or rather with how man can become what he really is in his profoundest and prismatic nature (fitrah), namely, a theomorphic being created to reflect the Divine in all Its Majesty and Beauty. To achieve this end, Islam brought a metaphysical doctrine of the highest order and numerous sciences related inextricably to that supreme scientia sacra contained in the

¹. We have provided ample arguments for the organic relation between Islam and the Islamic sciences, particularly those of nature, in many of our writings, arguments which cannot be repeated in an illustrated study such as the present one. See especially our An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, Cambridge (U.S.A.), 1964 (new edition, London, in press); and Science and Civilization in Islam, Cambridge (U.S.A.), 1968 and New York, 1970.

inner dimensions of the Quran, and made accessible through various rites and forms which are also of a sacred nature and derive directly from the revelation. The doctrine is based on the Unity of the Principle (al-tawhîd) and the interrelatedness of all that has been brought into being by the creative act (the kūn of the Quran). Its human complement is the doctrine of the Universal Man (al-insân al-kâmîl) in whom the fullness of the human state is realized and through whom multiplicity returns to Unity.

Upon the basis of the nature of ultimate reality as reflected in pure doctrine Islam has promulgated laws, called the Shari'ah, governing human life whose aim is to enable man to live in conformity with this Reality. It has also brought into being a sacred art whose goal is to reflect that Reality in the world surrounding man during his terrestrial journey. Like all integral traditions, Islam is thus a total way of life, aimed at remoulding man's nature to enable him to become what he is eternally in the Divine Presence, and transforming the manner of man's doing and making to bring them into conformity with his role as God's vice-gerent in this world and with his ultimate destiny as a being made for immortality.

The unifying perspective of Islam has never allowed various forms of knowledge to be cultivated independently of each other. There has, on the contrary, always been a hierarchy of knowledge in which every form of knowledge from that of material substances to the highest metaphysics is organically interrelated, reflecting the structure of Reality itself. Moreover, Islamic spirituality has always been sapiential and gnostic in nature, so that the quest for knowledge has possessed a particular religious aura even among common people in a way that is rarely found to this extent in other traditions. The rise of the Islamic sciences and their later development is inconceivable without the ever present spirit of the Islamic revelation, and the manner this revelation has moulded the minds, actions and surroundings of the men and civilizations responsible for the creation and cultivation of the sciences.

On a more outward plane the particular manner in which Islam spread and the whole unfolding of its history are also of course of paramount importance for an understanding of the rise and later growth of the Islamic sciences. The Prophet Muhammad — upon whom be peace — unified Arabia in his twenty-three years of prophethood. The four caliphs who followed — Abû Bakr, ‘Umar, ‘Uthmân and ‘Ali — called ‘the rightly guided’ (khulafâ’ râshidûn) — consolidated the newly founded 'world of Islam' (dâr al-islâm) and spread its boundaries to Central Asia on the one hand and North Africa on the other. But the perfect norm of social and political life established by the Prophet was put under great tension and stress by centrifugal forces latent within Arab society and by the passions and short-comings of men, which had been checked momentarily by that blinding Divine intervention in human history which is Islam.

A fall from this early period of intense religious fervour in which sanctity and political authority were combined began with the death of ‘Ali. Henceforth the caliphate became less 'apostolic' and more 'political' in character although still of a completely religious nature, there being no secularism in Islam. The Umayyad caliphate following upon the wake of the assassination of ‘Ali by a member of the Khawârij ruled for nearly a century, to be followed by the Abbasids, the Umayyads of Andalusia, the Fâtîmids, and numerous sultanates and princely states ranging from the powerful Seljuks who ruled over nearly all of Western Asia to hardly noticed local dynasties. Gradually Persia and North Africa became politically independent in fact if not in theory until with the Mongol invasion even the theoretical political unity symbolized by the Abbasid caliphate came to an end and the Islamic world became polarized into the three vast empires of the

3. ‘But His command, when He intendeth a thing, is only that He saith unto it: Be! (kūn) and it is’ (Quran, XXXVI, 82; Pickthall translation).
4. On these two pillars of all Islamic doctrine, see Nasr, Science and Civilization in Islam, chap. 13; also al-Jillî, De l'homme universel, trans. by T. Burckhardt, Lyon, 1953.
5. This does not mean that Islamic spirituality has excluded the element of love. It is only a question of accent, for no complete spiritual path can exclude the three basic elements of fear, love and knowledge.
Ottomans, Safavids and Moguls. But this pattern of apparent political turmoil and upheaval did not destroy the unity and stability of Islamic society protected by both the Shari‘ah and a sacred art, each of which in its own way enabled the Muslims to breathe in an Islamic universe whose horizons guarded a continuity that is hardly imaginable in an anti-traditional world.

Meanwhile during these periods Islam grew geographically in a continuous manner and spread in three basic phases to its present boundaries. In the first phase up to the early Abbasid period the heartland of the Islamic world from Spain to Central Asia was conquered and consolidated. During the second period from around the 7th/13th to the 10th/16th centuries Islam spread, this time completely peacefully and mostly by means of Sufism, to the Indian sub-continent and the Indonesian archipelago. And since the last century Islam has been spreading steadily in Africa. In fact throughout its history, and despite various political ups and downs, Islam has grown steadily geographically, never receding in any territory with the exception of the Iberian peninsula, which after eight centuries of rule the Muslims lost to the Christians. But the main arena in which the Islamic sciences were cultivated and developed was for the most part that earliest part of dār al-islām spreading from Central Asia and Persia to Spain, the land which has always remained, especially in its central regions, the intellectual and geographical heartland of the Islamic world, the land in which before everywhere else the message of the Islamic revelation was consolidated into forms and institutions governing human society.

* * *

The central theophany of the Islamic revelation from which have been drawn the principles of both knowledge and action is the Holy Quran, to which must be added the prophetic Hadith, that is, the Prophet’s commentary and extension of the teachings of the Book of God. The Quran and Hadith together are the fountainhead of all that is Islamic in whatever domain it might be. More specifically, these sources have played a double role in the creation and cultivation of the sciences. First of all the principle, not of course the details, of all science is considered by Muslims to be contained in the Quran, and there is an esoteric interpretation of the Holy Book which makes possible the unveiling of its mysteries and penetration into its inner meaning wherein reside the principles of all the sciences. Secondly, the Quran and the Hadith have created an atmosphere for the cultivation of the sciences by emphasizing the virtue of pursuing all knowledge that is in one way or another a confirmation of Divine Unity. Therefore, a whole metaphysics and cosmology have issued from the bosom of the Quran and the Hadith and have acted as the basis upon which all the Islamic sciences have been constructed. They have also created a particular atmosphere which has fostered and encouraged all intellectual activity that is in conformity with the spirit of Islam as reflected in the Quran and the Hadith. The importance of the dicta contained in these

7. Throughout this work the dates on the left refer to the Islamic lunar calendar and those on the right to the Christian calendar.


9. When the Holy Prophet was asked how he should be remembered after his death, he answered, ‘Read the Holy Quran’. The text of the Quran, which is the word of God and divinely inspired in both form and meaning, contains something of the trace of the soul of the Holy Prophet. The Hadith is, therefore, bound in a most intimate manner with the Quran. In fact without it much of the Quran would be incomprehensible.

10. It needs to be emphasized that this has nothing to do with trying to harmonize the Book of God with ‘modern

11. This is true not only of the ‘transmitted sciences’ (al-ulūm al-naqlīyyah), with which we are not so much concerned in this book, but also of the ‘intellectual sciences’ (al-ulūm al-aqīlīyyah), which form the main subject matter of our present study. On the division of the Islamic sciences into these categories see Nasr, Science and Civilization in Islam, pp. 59ff. We shall also deal briefly with this subject in the next chapter of the present work.
General Background

Figure 1. Verses from the Holy Quran concerning knowledge.

« آية الكرسي «سورة بقرة 2. آية 252»

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لاَ إِلَهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْعَلِيمُ الْحَكِيمُ

Figure 1a. Allah! There is no God save Him, the Alive, the Eternal. Neither slumber nor sleep overtaketh Him. To Him belongeth whatsoever is in the heavens and whatsoever is in the earth. Who is he that intercedeth with Him save by His leave? He knoweth that which is in front of them and that which is behind them, while they encompass nothing of His knowledge save what He will. His throne includeth the heavens and the earth, and He is never weary of preserving them. He is the Sublime, the Tremendous.

Figure 1b. Allah is the Light of the heavens and the earth. The similitude of his light is as a niche wherein is a lamp. The lamp is in a glass. The glass is as it were a shining star. (This lamp) is kindled from a blessed tree, an olive neither of the East nor of the West, whose oil would almost glow forth (of itself) though no fire touched it. Light upon light. Allah guideth unto His light whom He will. And Allah speaketh to mankind in allegories for Allah is Knower of all things.
Figure 1c. Are those who know equal with those who know not? But only men of understanding will pay heed.

Figure 1d. We shall show them our portents on the horizons and within themselves until it will be manifest unto them that it is the Truth.
General Background

Figure 2. Sayings of the Holy Prophet pertaining to knowledge.

قال رسول الله: طلب العلم فريضة على كل مسلم.

Figure 2a. The Holy Prophet has said: 'The quest of knowledge is obligatory for every Muslim'.

قال رسول الله: إن العلماء ورثة الأسباط.

Figure 2b. The Holy Prophet has said: 'Verily the men of knowledge are the inheritors of the prophets'.

قال رسول الله: أطلب من المصلى الذي.

Figure 2c. The Holy Prophet has said: 'Seek knowledge from the cradle to the grave'.
two basic sources of Islam for an understanding of
the Islamic sciences in their organic link with the
Islamic religion and the civilization created by
Islam can hardly be overemphasized, for these
sayings have moulded the minds of Muslim men
of learning over the ages and have provided for
them a source of both knowledge and inspiration.

* * * *

Islamic science came into being from a
wedding between the spirit that issued from the
Quranic revelation and the existing sciences of
various civilizations which Islam inherited and
which it transmuted through its spiritual power
into a new substance, at once different from and
continuous with what had existed before it. The
international and cosmopolitan nature of Islamic
civilization, derived from the universal character
of the Islamic revelation and reflected in the geo-
graphical spread of the Islamic world (dār al-
islām), enabled it to create the first science of a
truly international nature in human history.

Islam became heir to the intellectual
heritage of all the major civilizations before it save
that of the Far East, and it became a haven within
which various intellectual traditions found a new
lease upon life, albeit transformed within a new
spiritual universe. This point must be repeated,
particularly since so many people in the West
wrongly believe that Islam acted simply as a
bridge over which ideas of Antiquity passed to
mediaeval Europe. As a matter of fact nothing
could be further from the truth, for no idea, theory
or doctrine entered the citadel of Islamic thought
unless it became first Muslimized and integrated
into the total world view of Islam. Whatever could
not make its peace (salām) with Islam was sooner
or later dispelled from the arena of Islamic
intellectual life or relegated completely to the
margin of the tapestry of the Islamic sciences.

Before the rise of the Islamic sciences
many civilizations had come and gone and pro-
duced sciences of various domains of reality and
with different orders of perfection. The vast
proto-history of science which leads to the
deepest recesses of human history and which
reveals with each new discovery astounding
achievements need not concern us here. It is to
the immediate predecessors of Islamic science
that we must turn. The two outstanding river
civilizations of Egypt and Mesopotamia had
already produced medicine and mathematics of
extraordinary quality before the Greek philoso-
phers and scientists came upon the stage to
theorize about them and to develop them further.
Basing themselves upon this long tradition of the
study of the heavens as well as the world of
nature, the Greeks in turn produced Thales,
Pythagoras, Plato and Aristotle within a relatively
short period of less than three centuries before the
centre of their scientific activity shifted to
Alexandria. There in the soil of Egypt, at the
moment of the twilight of Greek power and the
dying gasps of ancient Egyptian civilization, a
new synthesis of Greek, Egyptian and Oriental
learning was achieved leading to one of the most
prolific periods of the history of science, which
produced such men as Euclid, Ptolemy and
indirectly Galen, figures who entered Islamic
civilization almost as if they had been Muslim
teachers and masters. It is important for an
understanding of Islamic science to realize that
the Graeco-Hellenistic heritage reached Islam
directly not from Athens but through Alexandria,
that Plato was seen mostly through the ideas of the
Neoplatonists and Aristotle through Alexander
Aphrodisias and Themistius. Alexandrian science,
in its combining of mystical elements with rigor-
ous logic, in synthesizing various scientific tradi-
tions, in basing all the sciences upon a hierarchy
related to the 'mode of knowledge' and in many
other ways, is a historical anticipation of Islamic
science and in fact became transformed into
Islamic science in the same manner that the
Alexandria of Ptolemy and Origen became
transformed into the jewel of Islamic Egypt, the


13. Recent studies have unveiled amazing intellectual and
more specifically scientific achievements going back
to the Palaeolithic period. See J. Servier, L'homme et
l'invisible, Paris, 1964; and G. Di Santillana and E. von

14. Those Hellenic and Hellenistic masters who were in
conformity with the Islamic perspective and who were
integrated into the Islamic intellectual universe were so
thoroughly Muslimized that to this day their names are
given to numerous children all over the Islamic world.
In any Muslim city such as for example Tehran there are
certainly more Aristotles, Euclids and Galens than in an
Anglo-Saxon city (the modern Greeks themselves are
of course an exception in their usage of these ancient
names).
home of such masters as Ibn ‘Aṭā’allāh al-Iskandari.

But the transmission of the Graeco-Hellenistic tradition to Islam was not a direct one. Several centuries of Christian history lie between the golden age of Alexandria and the rise of Islam. Alexandria was to become transformed into a major intellectual centre of early Christianity, then to undergo severe rivalries with other centres of Christian power, especially Constantinople and Antioch, and finally to bear witness to the death of its scientific activity under the pressure of Byzantine emperors, a death which is symbolized forcefully by the hanging of Hypatia, the daughter of Heron, in one of the squares of the city and the burning of its fabulous libraries. But before this tragic end the main intellectual activity of Alexandria had been transmitted to Antioch thanks to the fierce rivalry that had come into being between the Monophysite and Nestorian Churches of the East on the one hand and the Byzantine Church on the other. Furthermore rivalries between the Byzantines and the Sassanids, who naturally supported any schismatic movement against the Byzantines, pushed the centres of learning of the eastern churches ever more eastward to Edessa, Nisibis and finally to within the boundaries of the Persian Empire itself.

But the Christian centres of the Near East where Greek was taught and Syriac used as the language of science and learning were not the only channels which linked the intellectual life of Antiquity to that of Islam. There developed among the people of Harran a religious cult later

15. Research during the past few decades has shown clearly that the libraries of Alexandria had been destroyed for the most part long before the Islamic conquest of Egypt and that by the 1st 7th century there was little left for the Muslims to either burn or preserve.

16. It is remarkable how internal theological dispute between various Christian churches helped to transmit the scientific heritage of the ancient world to Islam.

known to Muslims as Sabaeanism\(^\text{17}\) that combined elements drawn from Babylonian religion with the more esoteric aspects of the Greek tradition. The Harrānians were heirs, therefore, to the astronomical and astrological teachings of the Babylonians as well as to Neopythagoreanism and Hermeticism. Independent of Christian centres of learning they transmitted to the Muslims many aspects of the Graeco-Hellenistic heritage, and independent of the Greek world certain aspects of Babylonian mathematics and astronomy which are reflected in Muslim sources but have not been found in Greek ones.

As far as the Persian world is concerned, it too transmitted to Islamic civilization many sciences, some of its own and some ultimately of Greek and Indian origin. During the Sassanid period the Persians developed Jundishapur, near the present day Persian city of Ahvaz, as a university centre which in fact grew steadily until it became heir to both Antioch and Edessa, a haven for men of learning everywhere, and by the time of the fall of the Sassanids without doubt the most important centre of learning in Western Asia, particularly in the field of medicine. Jundishapur was a cosmopolitan gathering place where Persian, Greek and Indian men of learning met and worked together. In many fields, especially in medicine, this school more than any other was the living link between Islamic science and the ancient world. Meanwhile the Persians themselves showed special interest and made important discoveries in astronomy on the one hand and pharmacology on the other at the same time that they cultivated avidly both the Indian and the Greek sciences. Persia made major contributions to nearly every facet of Islamic civilization, became one of its major centres and played a central role in its creation. But in the field of science Persia played a triple role as far as transmission was concerned: it transmitted its own scientific tradition to Islam, as seen in such works as the *Royal Astronomical Tables (Zij-i shahrīyār)*; it made available certain aspects of Greek learning to Muslims which had been translated into Pahlavi or even Syriac but taught in centres of learning within Persia such as Jundishapur; and finally it passed on to Islam many of the Indian sciences, especially medicine, astronomy and natural history, which had been cultivated by the Sassanids. A particularly outstanding example of this latter role is the *Kalīlah wa Dimnah*, which was first translated from Sanskrit into Pahlavi and then by Ibn Muqaffa' into Arabic, becoming rapidly one of the masterpieces of Arabic literature and at the same time a source for Muslim natural history\(^\text{18}\).

As for India itself, its scientific tradition, especially in mathematics (including astronomy) and medicine reached Islam not only through Sassanid Persia but also thanks to a number of Indian men of learning who were invited to Baghdad and other Islamic intellectual centres. Of course the Indian sciences entered into the Islamic world again through the writings of al-Bīrūnī in the 5th/11th century and soon after through the numerous works of Amir Khusraw. But as far as the genesis of Islamic science is concerned it was mostly as a result of the translation of certain basic texts of mathematics and astronomy such as the *Brāhmasphutasiddhānta* of Erahmagupta and a few medical works, particularly concerning drugs and poisons, that Indian science made a visible effect upon Islamic science and became one of the notable elements that contributed to its birth.

Finally, a word must be said of the Far East. It is true that no traces of the Chinese scientific tradition are visible within dār al-islām at the moment of the founding of the Islamic sciences and that we must wait until after the Mongol invasion for the official transmission of Chinese scientific works through their translation into Persian and Arabic. But there is no doubt that there was some kind of earlier contact even with China. The transmission to the Muslims of such important Chinese technological inventions as the making of paper and the appearance of certain definitely Chinese elements such as the Ming-Tang in early Islamic alchemy are witness

---

17. This should not be confused with the Sabaean or Mandaean cults of Iraq and Southern Persia which continue to this day. On the Sabaeans of Harran the classical work of D. Chwolson, *Die Sabier und der Sbabismus*, 2 vols., St. Petersburg, 1856, is still valuable. See also E. Drower, *The Mandaeans of Iraq and Iran*, Oxford, 1937.

General Background

to contacts which were not merely bound to business transactions through land or sea but which possessed an intellectual and scientific aspect. There is no doubt, however, that the Far Eastern element in the foundation of the Islamic sciences does not appear in any way with the Greek, Indian or Persian, which formed for the most part the *materia prima* upon which Islam imposed a new intellectual and spiritual form, creating through this wedding the Islamic sciences.

* * *

The actual process of transmission of the sciences of ancient civilizations from such languages as Greek, Syriac, Sanskrit and Pahlavi into Arabic is one of the most remarkable instances of cultural transmission in human history, to be compared only with such other major processes of translation and transmission as the rendering of the Buddhist sutras into Chinese, and Arabic works into Latin. But in both quantity and quality the translation of works into Arabic surpasses perhaps all other episodes of a similar nature. Without outward compulsion but driven mostly of all by an inner need to know, in conformity with the ‘gnostic’ nature of Islamic spirituality, the young and extremely virile Islamic civilization channelled its energies into the vast enterprise of translation, establishing such well known academies as the *Bayt al-hikmah* of al-Ma'mūn for this purpose. The existence of religious minorities within dār al-islām, minorities whose scholars were eminently suited for the task of translation, facilitated the process as did the fact that many scientific works had already been rendered into Syriac, a Semitic language which was the sister of Arabic.

Nevertheless the translation of the majority of the important scientific works of Antiquity into Arabic within a period of about 150 years stretching from the 2nd/8th to the 4th/10th centuries was no mean task. Thanks to such masters of translation as Ḥunayn ibn Isḥāq and to the concerted effort of caliphs, princes and viziers, the main scientific works of such men as Hippocrates, Aristotle, Theophrastus, Euclid, Ptolemy, Dioscorides, Galen and many others were rendered into a precise Arabic. Moreover this was done with the help of an oral tradition which has made of these translations something that is often more true to the original Greek, Syriac or whatever other language was involved than most modern translations. Thanks to this movement Arabic became the most important scientific language of the world for many centuries and the ground was prepared for the rapid growth of the Islamic sciences properly speaking. The translations provided the *materia prima* upon which the Muslim mind pondered and which it moulded into the substructure for the Islamic sciences that soon came into being as a body of knowledge at once distinct and related to the age-old intellectual traditions which it had inherited and adopted as its own thanks to the synthesizing and integrating power of the Islamic revelation. Henceforth this science, while revealing the traits of its historical origins, has been more than anything else the crystallization of the study of the cosmos and its parts from the perspective of Islam as reflected in the most principial manner in the Quran and the prophetic traditions.


21. One should not, however, forget the great importance of Persian especially for the later period of Islamic history.
Chapter II
The Islamic Educational System

The cultivation of the Islamic sciences depended upon a vast educational system which embraced both formal and informal education and which made possible the encouragement and transmission of knowledge in all its forms. The educational system was of course based on the traditional Islamic concept of knowledge and learning. It emphasized most of all the religious sciences but included nearly all other forms of knowledge from theodicy to pharmacology. Islam considers knowledge (‘ilm) as something sacred because ultimately all knowledge concerns some aspect of God’s theophanies. It is this sacred view of knowledge that has imbued the whole Islamic educational system to this day making it even institutionally inseparable from specific religious organizations and institutions such as the mosque, the Sufi centre and places run by means of endowments (awqāf).¹ This view has made the relation between the teacher and the student of traditional schools a most intimate and spiritual one, and teachers have enjoyed a reverence hardly imaginable in modern societies. There is in fact a well-known saying attributed to ‘Alī ibn Abī Ṭālib – upon whom be peace – which states, ‘I have become the slave of him who has taught me a single word.’² The whole affair of education has always been at the heart of Islamic civilization as one of its basic pillars because it has been inseparable from the tradition itself which forms the marrow and the backbone of the whole of Islamic civilization.

Because of this inseparable link the Islamic concept of knowledge is based upon the two fundamental axes of unity and hierarchy. Like existence itself, with which knowledge is ultimately identical,³ the sciences or forms of knowledge are ultimately one, and at the same time belong to a hierarchic order. Knowledge is not random as it appears in the profusion of profane knowledge today when there is no longer an organic link between man’s various modes and

¹. The institution of awqāf is vast and embraces nearly every facet of traditional Islamic society, but its relation to schools, libraries and other specifically educational institutions is particularly strong. On the institution of awqāf see M. Gaudefroy-Demombynes, Les Institutions musulmanes, Paris, 1950.

². ‘Man ‘allamānī ḥarfan fa qad sayyaranī ‘abdān.’

³. This basic doctrine was made fully explicit in later centuries from two different perspectives in the majestic doctrines of Ibn ‘Arabi and Mullā Ṣadrā.
ways of knowing. The Islamic sciences and the intellectual perspectives cultivated in Islam have always been seen in a hierarchy which leads ultimately to the knowledge of the One, of the supreme ‘Substance’, this being itself from another point of view the Substance of all knowledge. That is why whenever confronted with sciences originally cultivated by other civilizations Muslim intellectual authorities sought to integrate them into the Islamic scheme of the hierarchy of knowledge. And that also is why the greatest Muslim gnostics, philosophers and scientists from al-Kindi, al-Farabi and Ibn Sinâ to al-Ghazzâli, Naṣîr al-Dîn al-Ţûsî and Mullâ Šârâd were concerned with the question of the classification of the sciences.

The Muslims saw two main channels open before man for the acquiring of formal knowledge: the path of revealed truth, which after its revelation is transmitted from one generation to the next in a form which the Muslims called ‘the transmitted sciences’ (al-‘ulûm al-naqîliyyah), and knowledge acquired through the God-given intelligence of man on both the level of the intellect and reason and which the Muslims came to call the ‘intellectual sciences’ (al-‘ulûm al-aqliyyah). To these two classes of formal knowledge, together usually referred to as ‘acquired knowledge’ (al-‘îlum al-‘huṣûlî), must be added the sapiential wisdom, the gnosis which results from vision (kashf) and the actual ‘tasting’ of the truth (dhawq, in Latin sapere, to taste, which is the root of sapientia) and which the Muslims have usually called ‘presential knowledge’ (al-‘îlum al-hudûrî).

Faced with the great array of various pre-Islamic sciences made available through translation along with the vast river of both exoteric and esoteric sciences that had flowed from the inexhaustible ocean of the Quranic revelation, Muslim intellectual authorities set out to classify the sciences, hoping in this way to elucidate their hierarchy and contribute to the solution of the problem of the harmony between reason and revelation, or religion and science. Al-Kindi was perhaps the first to turn to this problem in his Fi aqṣâm al-‘ulûm (On the Types of the Sciences). But it was the work of his successor in the Peripatetic school, Abû Naṣîr al-Fârâbî, the ‘Second Teacher’, which wielded a much wider influence over the curricula of Muslim universities and even those of the West. The Kitâb iṣāşa al-‘ulûm (The Enumeration of the Sciences) of al-Fârâbî reflects at once the Aristotelian classification of the sciences as transmitted to Muslims through the commentary of John Philoponos upon the Isagoge of Porphyry and the desire to harmonize this concept with that derived from the Quran and especially the Sharî‘ah. This work not only influenced later Muslim authors but became also widely known in the West thanks to the translation of Dominic Gundisalvi, and is cited by many Latin authors such as Peter of Abano.

With the continuous development of the Islamic sciences new branches and forms of science came into being and at the same time the sciences which were taken over from the pre-Islamic civilizations were ever more Muslimized and fitted into the Islamic hierarchy of knowledge. Both these tendencies are reflected in the later schemes of classification to which dozens of separate treatises or chapters have been devoted by such masters as Ibn Sinâ, the Ikhwân al-Şafâ‘, al-Ghazzâli and Ibn Rushd and even by the remarkable historian of the 8th/14th century Ibn Khaldûn who in his Mugaddimah (Prolegomena) to the general study of history gives an elaborate account of the classification of the Islamic sciences after their period of maturity.

From the time of Ibn Khaldûn onward several philosophical and scientific encyclopaedias appeared in both Arabic and Persian, and later also in Turkish, in which the classification of the sciences are discussed. Some of these works like the Durrat al-tâj of Qub al-Dîn al-Shirāzî are more concerned with philosophy and others like the Tadhkirah of Dâ‘ûd al-Anţâkî more with the distinction between intellectus and ratio in the traditional schools of ancient and mediaeval philosophy.


6. The distinction between these two instruments of knowledge is as fundamental to Islamic thought as is the

7. See D. M. Dunlop, Arabic Science in the West, Karachi, 1958, pp. 88–89.

The Islamic Educational System

Figure 4a. The classification of the sciences according to the Iḥāṣ al-ʿulūm of al-Fārābī.

sciences. One of the most complete and widespread of these encyclopaedias which mentions nearly all the sciences cultivated in Islamic civilization is the Nafāʾis al-funūn (Precious Elements of the Sciences) of Shams al-Dīn al-Āmulī written during the 9th/15th century. The numerous sciences outlined by Āmulī and the classification upon which the work is based reflect the spectrum and the hierarchy of the Islamic sciences after their full flowering and centuries of development.

The Muslims became faced once again in the 13th/19th century with the onslaught of Western science, which has since threatened both the Islamic hierarchy of knowledge and the harmony of its educational system, wreaking havoc with them to an extent that is unprecedented in Islamic history. Al-Fārābī became known as the ‘Second Teacher’ (al-mu'allim al-thānī) because he gave order to the sciences and classified them. To a lesser extent Mir Dāmād performed the same function in Safavid Persia and gained the title of the ‘Third Teacher’. Today Islam is truly in need of a ‘Fourth Teacher’ to re-establish the hierarchy of knowledge so essential to the Islamic perspective and to classify the sciences once again in such a way as to prevent the Sacred from being inundated by the profane and the ultimate goal of all knowledge from being forgotten amidst the glitter of quickly changing forms of science which

General Background

The Classification of the Sciences according to the *Naṭā‘is al-funūn fi ṣarā‘is al-ṣuyūn* by Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Āmuli

*First classification*

- **Philosophical sciences** (which are the same at all periods)
  - **Theoretical**
    - metaphysics (supreme science)
    - mathematics (intermediate science)
    - natural philosophy (lower science)
  - **Practical**
    - pertaining to the individual — ethics
    - pertaining to the collectivity — economics and politics
- **Non-philosophical sciences** (which are not the same at all periods)
  - **Religious**
    - intellectual
      - transmitted
  - **Non-religious**

*Second classification*

- **Practical philosophy** (including ethics, politics and economics)
- **Theoretical philosophy** (including logic, prime philosophy, metaphysics, science of natural bodies and all branches of natural philosophy)
- **Early (awā‘īl)**
  - principles of mathematics (including arithmetic, geometry, astronomy and music)
  - branches of natural philosophy (including medicine, alchemy, natural magic, etc.)
  - branches of mathematics (including all branches of astronomy such as the science of *anwā‘*, mathematical geography, mechanical devices, chess and backgammon)
- **Late (awākhir)**
  - literature
  - sciences of law (*sharī‘iyāt*)
  - Sufism
  - sciences of ‘daily discourse’ (*muḥāwarāt*) such as history, biography, genealogy, etc.

*Figures 4b and 4c.* Two different classifications of the sciences according to the *Naṭā‘is al-funūn fi ṣarā‘is al-ṣuyūn* by Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Āmuli.
move ever more rapidly without approaching any closer to the centre of the circle of universal existence.\textsuperscript{10}

\* \* \* \*

The centres in which the Islamic sciences have been taught over the ages have been an integral aspect of Islamic civilization, participating in its formal unity in the same way that the content of the sciences became integrated into the all-embracing intellectual unity of Islam. From the beginning the mosque was at once the religious and social centre of the Islamic community as well as the centre for learning. To this day Quranic schools (where the fountainhead of all the Islamic sciences, namely the Quran, is taught to the young) are connected with the local mosques in various quarters of Muslim cities.

But historically there gradually developed a distinct institution called madrasah (literally ‘the place for lessons’) which grew alongside the mosque and is still closely associated with it. At the beginning certain parts of mosques were used for lessons in religious sciences, each master occupying a corner or pillar of his own which in fact often became associated with his name. Then as teaching became formalized and extended, buildings were often erected specifically for teaching purposes, with mosques attached to them. In either case, however, both architecturally and intellectually the mosque and the madrasah have never been dissociated from each other and some of the greatest Muslim centres of learning such as al-Azhar are even now both mosques and schools, reflecting the profoundly religious character of learning in Islam.

The madrasah developed into a full-fledged university around eleven hundred years ago, a university in which a variety of subjects from religious law to astronomy were taught regularly. Some of the earliest Islamic educational institutions dating from this period of genesis in fact still survive, the best examples being perhaps the Qarawiyyin in Fez, the Zaytuniyyah in Tunis and al-Azhar in Cairo.\textsuperscript{11} Other outstanding madrasahs, such as those of Qum, Mashhad, Samarqand, Isfahan, Najaf, San’a’, Lucknow and the like belong to later periods of Islamic history, but are profoundly connected to the earlier madrasahs. Likewise the mediaeval European universities and their curricula reflect their close relation with the Muslim universities, which they emulated consciously.

As far as the intellectual sciences are concerned, they have not always been taught in all the


\textsuperscript{11} On al-Azhar, which is the most thoroughly studied of Muslim universities, see B. Dodge, \textit{Muslim Education in Medieval Times}, Washington, 1962.
Plate 3. Interior of the Gawharshad Mosque and School in Mashhad, Iran.

Plate 4. A general view of Shir-dar madrasah on Registan Square in Samarkand.
madrasahs, especially during the past few centuries. The mainstay of the curriculum of the madrasahs has always been the religious sciences. Nevertheless, many of the intellectual sciences such as philosophy, logic and mathematics have been taught in various madrasahs over the ages and are still taught today. This is especially true of the Persian madrasahs, where traditional philosophy is taught even now and where through the Safavid period mathematics was also taught on a serious level.¹²

¹² The whole philosophy of education involved in the traditional madrasah is of the utmost significance even today but cannot be dealt with in a book such as this. See A. L. Tibawi, Islamic Education: its Traditions and Modernization into the Arab National Systems, London, 1972. As for the ‘decay’ of many of the sciences in the Islamic world from the 11th/17th and 12th/18th centuries onward (and not the 7th/13th century as most Western historians of science imagine) it is without doubt directly related to a gradual loss of interest in such subjects as mathematics in the madrasahs and the deleting of more advanced courses on these subjects from the curriculum of the madrasahs.

today strangely enough in the Indo-Pakistani sub-continent, like that of Hyderabad, Deccan, have been throughout Islamic history a major scientific institution, combining the curing of patients with extensive teaching of medicine, pharmacology and allied subjects.14

Another important scientific institution which complemented the hospital and in which both research and teaching took place was the observatory. In fact it can be said without exaggeration that the observatory as a scientific institution owes its birth to Islamic civilization.15 While in the early Islamic period the observatory was of a small size and usually associated with a single astronomer, from the 7th/13th century and the building of the Maragah observatory by Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī, it became a major scientific institution in which numerous scientists gathered.

Figures 6 and 7. Master physician (possibly Ibn Sinā) teaching medicine.

Figure 8. A figure purported to be Ibn Sinā (Avicenna) teaching a group of students.

14. A living example of this in contemporary form can be seen in the Hamdard institutes of Delhi and Karachi established by two of the leading traditional physicians (ḥakims) of the Islamic world, the brothers Ḥakim ʿAbd al-Ḥamid and Ḥakim Muḥammad Saʿīd.

Plate 7. Osmania Hospital, Hyderabad, Deccan, India.
Plate 8. Miniature showing students studying astronomy with their teacher.
to work and teach together. The Maraghah observatory served as the source of inspiration and model for the Ulugh-Beg observatory in Samarqand and the Istanbul observatory of the Ottoman period where Taqi al-Din worked. These observatories in turn served as models for the several observatories constructed by Jai Singh in the 12th/18th century in India in such cities as Delhi and Jaipur and also were the model for the early European observatories such as those used by Tycho Brahe and Kepler. An analysis of the astronomical instruments in these 10th/16th and 11th/17th century European observatories and their comparison with earlier Muslim instruments reveals the close nexus between the Muslim and later European observatories.

The formal and public institutions of learning so far mentioned are not, however, the only ones to consider when discussing the important centres for the teaching and the transmission of the sciences in Islam. Much of the transmission of learning, especially of more esoteric knowledge, has taken place and continues to take place in private circles not accessible to the public at large. These circles include first of all the Sufi centres (*khânaqâh* in Persian and *zâwiyyah* in Arabic), where not only initiatic and spiritual practices take place but also many of the esoteric and sometimes even exoteric sciences are taught. The Sufi centres became especially important as centres of formal learning after the Mongol invasion, when they were forced to fulfil the role of the *madrasahs* destroyed by the Mongol onslaught as well as their own proper function of training the adepts spiritually.

There are also private circles connected with a particular teacher, meeting either at his house or the house of one of his disciples. Much of traditional learning is carried out today in the Islamic world in such private circles whose great propaedeutic importance can hardly be overestimated. Moreover, the occult sciences such as alchemy or geomancy have always been taught in such completely private circumstances. The *atelier* of an alchemist is almost always his home or the house of an adept, and it is here that those considered by the alchemist as capable of mastering the royal art have been and are to this day trained. The same could be said of the other esoteric and occult sciences, the former being also taught in Sufi centres but the latter almost exclusively in completely private places and gatherings. The channels of learning are like
arteries and veins in the body of Islamic society, some externally visible and others hidden. But together they have always played the vital role of enabling the life-giving blood of knowledge to flow through the body of the community, to rejuvenate it constantly and to preserve its vitality, enabling it to fulfil the function for which it has been destined by its very acceptance of the celestial norm of the Islamic revelation.
Part Two
The Islamic Sciences
The Qualitative Study of the Universe
Chapter III
Cosmology, Cosmography and Geography

No understanding of the Islamic sciences or for that matter the sciences of any other tradition is possible without a consideration of the cosmology to which the branches of the traditional sciences are related like so many limbs belonging to a living organism. Even modern science, whether realized fully by its cultivators or not, functions within a world view created by 17th century rationalism and has been inseparable from this philosophical background since the scientific revolution. So much more is the reliance upon a ‘theoretical’ background true of the Islamic sciences which are but applications and aspects of traditional Islamic cosmology and therefore of the metaphysical principles of the tradition of which the cosmological sciences themselves are expressions and reflections upon the cosmic plane.

The cosmos is at once continuous and discontinuous with respect to its Origin, the Origin which is Pure Being and ultimately the Absolute and Infinite Reality which stands beyond even Being. As Being, the Origin is like the Sun of which all existents in the cosmos are rays. But the Origin is also Substance with respect to which the whole of the Universe is but a series of accidents, and

1. Modern science is related to the rationalistic universe emanating from the philosophical world view of the 17th century through its reliance upon human reason as the ultimate criterion of truth, its limiting of reality to the physical domain and its restricting of the relation between man and nature to the level of the senses and of reason analyzing the results of sense perception. Traditional sciences are related to metaphysical and cosmological principles in relying upon the language of symbolism, in basing themselves upon the hierarchic nature of the cosmos, in considering the analogies which exist between the macrocosm and the microcosm and in relying upon the Intellect, which pierces through phenomena to their noumenal essences, in addition to reason and the senses. See H. Butterfield, The Origins of Modern Science, New York, 1951; E. A. Burtt, The Metaphysical Foundations of Modern Science, New York, 1954; and F. Brunner, Science et réalité, Paris, 1954.

The Islamic Sciences: The Qualitative Study of the Universe

Essence of which all cosmic forms are but reflections and theophanies. The various cosmological schemes developed within Islam and the cosmos sanctified by the Islamic revelation are so many ways of depicting the relationship between the Origin and the Universe in its multiple levels of existence extending from the spiritual through the animic to the material (the rūḥ, nafs and jism of Islamic cosmologists and philosophers, corresponding to the spiritus, anima and corpus of the cosmologists of Antiquity). They are means of depicting this relationship in a ‘space’ which transcends purely physical space and also a ‘time’ which is beyond profane time, that is, within the matrix of the universal hierarchy which stands ‘above’ the terrestrial plane here and now and with respect to the ‘rhythms’ associated with the Substance or the phases of the ‘Breath of the Compassionate’ which determines from on high the cycles (adwār) of universal existence and cosmic events associated with cosmic history and also with eschatology.

Islamic cosmology is directly related to the principles of the Islamic revelation and to the metaphysics which issues forth from the esoteric message of the Quran and the inner teachings of the Prophet which are its complement. It is not a generalization of the physical sciences or the extension of a terrestrial physics to the confines of the visible Universe. It has in fact nothing to do with what passes for cosmology today. Islamic cosmology aims at providing a vision of the cosmos which enables man to pierce through the visible world to the higher states of existence and creating a science of the cosmic domain which acts as a ladder to allow man to mount to the ‘roof of the cosmos’, to use the well-known phrase associated with the works of Rūmī, and even beyond it to behold Metacosmic Reality which transcends all the planes of cosmic manifestation. The Origin or Principle of the Universe is at once Being, consciousness and bliss (wujūd, wuḍān and wajd in Arabic) and these qualities flow in the arteries of the cosmos precisely because the cosmos is a manifestation of the Principle. Traditional cosmologies are means of gaining knowledge of this positive aspect of the cosmos; in the bosom of metaphysical doctrines and with the aid of appropriate methods of realization they enable men to gain access to that consciousness and experience, that bliss which is already a foretaste of paradise.

To fulfill the role assigned to it within Islamic civilization, Islamic cosmology naturally discussed in esoteric schools, in both Sufism and various forms of Shi'ism.

3. See F. Schuon, Logic and Transcendence, trans. by P. Townsend, New York, 1975, chap. 5. ‘Substance may be compared to the centre of a spiral, and Essence to the centre of a system of concentric circles; one may also say that the notion of Substance is nearer to that of the Infinite and the notion of Essence nearer to that of the Absolute; again, there is in Substance an aspect of feminity and in Essence an aspect of masculinity.’ ibid., p. 76.

4. Sufis speak of the very ‘stuff’ or substance of the Universe as the ‘Breath of the Compassionate’ (nafs al-rahmān) which passing through the ‘essences’ (al-a'yān al-thabīthah) produces created beings like human breath which produces words and sounds by passing through the vocal cords. Man imitates on the human plane the act of creation through his speech and for that reason the word in the form of invocation (dhikr) plays such a central role in the ‘reversal’ of the cosmogonic act and the return of man to his Origin. On the dhikr see F. Schuon, The Transcendent Unity of Religions, trans. P. Townsend, New York, 1975, pp. 137 and 145–46.

5. In esoteric discussions of eschatology in Islam, rhythms of the manifestations of the Substance, or what would correspond to the days in the life of Brahma in Hinduism, are usually passed over in silence, but they are

6. The cosmology based upon traditional Islamic sources is concerned with all the states of being below the Divine Names and Qualities, beginning with the Spirit (al-Rūḥ), which is the ‘Divine Centre’ of the cosmos, extending to the four archangels, the eight angels connected with the Divine Throne, and then the various angelic hierarchies and ending with the psychic and finally physical worlds. These ‘worlds’ have been depicted in various fashions, perhaps the most central being the ‘Five Divine Presences’ (al-hadarāt al-ilāhiyyat al-khams) of Ibn ‘Arabi. See F. Schuon, Logic and Transcendence, pp. 97–100; and Schuon, Dimensions of Islam, chap. 11.

7. Concerning the Mathnawi of Rūmī it has been said, ‘These words are the ladder to the firmament. Whoever ascends it reaches the roof—Not the roof of the sphere that is blue, But the roof which transcends all the visible heavens.


8. It is not accidental that these terms possess the same root in Arabic.
Plate 10. A miniature image of the horse of the Archangel Gabriel.
has made use of numerous forms of symbolism and has had recourse to many different means through which the end in view could be achieved. In fact it could not be otherwise seeing that Islam had to create a world-wide civilization and integrate within its fold people of different psychological and mental constitutions. In all forms of cosmology, however, the aim has remained the same, namely to transform the cosmos and its parts into an ‘icon’ which can be contemplated and a mirror in which the One can be revealed within the matrix of multiplicity itself. Beginning with the Universe which has become transformed by the Quranic revelation, the Universe in which the Archangel Gabriel descended and the Prophet made his nocturnal ascent (al-mīrāj) to the Divine Proximity, Islamic cosmology has made use of such diverse elements as Quranic symbolism, concepts and symbols drawn from the doctrinal formulations of Sufism (itself developed to a large extent from the Quran and Ḥadīth), theosophical and philosophical descriptions of the cosmos, numerical symbolism and traditional astronomy. Islamic cosmology, therefore, displays many facets and forms but all leading to a single inner content. The meaning of all the cosmological schemes in Islam has remained the same, namely the relating of multiplicity to Unity, of existence to Being, of each creature on a particular level of existence to the higher levels and finally to the Divine Names and Qualities in which are to be found the principle and the ‘end’ of all cosmic manifestation.

No single ‘event’ is more central to the understanding of Islamic cosmology than the nocturnal ascent or al-mīrāj of the Blessed Prophet from Mecca to Jerusalem and then vertically through all the states of being to the Divine Throne (al-arsh) itself, an ‘event’ which is described in the Holy Quran and depicted by numerous miniaturists as well as described by countless writers and poets. The Prophet Muhammad — upon whom be peace — is himself the symbol of all that is positive in the cosmos, and the second Shahādah of Islam, Muḥammadun rasūl Allāh (Muḥammad is the Messenger of God) means esoterically among other things that the whole cosmos, in its positive aspect as symbol and not in its privative aspect as veil, comes from God. The nocturnal ascent of the Universal Man is therefore at once a return of the cosmos to its Source, the model for the spiritual life, and a delineation of the cosmos and hence the principal model for all Islamic cosmology. All the versions of the description of the cosmos to be found in various forms of Islamic cosmology are of the cosmos which was ‘experienced’ by the Prophet in his nocturnal journey and in fact Islamicized through this very journey as well as by the descent of the Holy Quran.¹⁰

The Muslim sages have elaborated Islamic cosmology in numerous treatises, sometimes making use of Quranic angelology alone and at other times incorporating into their works cosmological sciences drawn from other traditions but in conformity with the Islamic perspective. This is to be seen especially in the writings of Ibn ‘Arabi, who was like a sea into which the rivers of Pythagoreanism, Platonism and Hermeticism flowed and in which they became completely intermingled with purely Islamic esotericism. The symbolism of the Arabic alphabet, the astrological signs, numerical symbolism and the science of the Divine Names became synthesized in his writings into a pattern of unity that is characteristic of the synthesizing genius of this great master of Islamic gnosis.

Similar to the cosmology described by Ibn ‘Arabi but enclosed within the more particular world of Shi’ism are the schemes found in the writings of Sayyid Ḥaydar al-Āmulī, who was a disciple of Ibn ‘Arabi as well as an outstanding Shi’ite theosopher and theologian. He also had a particular love for geometric patterns and made use of them as symbols of his cosmological doctrines. He designed mandalas to be contemplated by the adept, complicated patterns in which the twelve Imāms of Shi’ism enter into the cosmic scheme to play a major role as so many epiphanies of the Logos and reflections of the

9. Among them may be mentioned the Persian Sufi poet Sanā’i whose Mi'rāj-nāmah along with several other Muslim sources most likely served as a source of inspiration for the Divine Comedy of Dante. See the well-known works of M. Asin Palacios, La escatología musulmana en la Divina Comedia, Madrid, 1919; and E. Cerulli, Il ‘Libro della scala’ e la questione delle fonti arabospagnole della Divina Comedia, Vatican, 1949.

10. The ‘night of power’ (laylat al-qadr), during which the Quran was revealed, and the ‘night of ascent’ (laylat al-mīrāj) complement each other and signify from the cosmological point of view the Islamicization of the cosmos in the descending and ascending orders, or from the cosmogonic and initiatic points of view.
Figure 10. The macrocosmic deployment of the Divine Names in their correspondence with cosmological and astrological states and signs, according to Ibn 'Arabi.
Figure 11. The correspondence between the Prophets, the Imāms and the cosmic hierarchy according to Sayyid Ḥaydar al-ʿAmuli.
The cosmic hierarchy according to the Euphrosus of the Dawlin al-Sufi.
Figure 13. The correspondence between the elements, the astrological signs, the parts of the human body and the letters of the Arabic alphabet according to Shams al-Din al-Buni.
Divine Light. The number twelve naturally plays a central role in these patterns, which unify angelology, imamology and astronomy in grand schemes unveiling the contours of the Islamic cosmos with its particular Shi'ite colour.

Another form of Islamic cosmology is to be found in the writing of those schools which were devoted to the science of the symbolism of numbers and letters and which often combined the Aristotelian doctrine of the three kingdoms and the Pythagorean philosophy of numbers with Islamic metaphysics while making use of the sciences concerned with the symbolism of the Arabic alphabet as well as the symbolism of certain words and phrases. In the case of the Ikhwan al-Šafâ', whose Epistles reflect closely the thought of certain circles within Shi'ism, especially Ismâ'îlism, and which are related in many ways to the Jâbi'rean corpus, there is to be found more than anything else a Pythagoreanism combined with Aristotelian natural philosophy and integrated into the matrix of Islamic esotericism, while in the works of such men as Shams al-Din al-Bûnî certain Hermetic and also magical ideas enter into the picture.

Cosmology deals with the content and cosmography with the external form and description of the cosmos. In the Islamic world there developed numerous cosmographies based upon the traditional cosmologies. One type of cosmography is to be found in the class of writings known as the Wonders of Creation (‘Ajâ'ib al-makhlûqât) by such men as Abû Yahyâ Zakariyyâ al-Qazwînî. These books begin with the angelic world and end with plants and minerals. Moreover, they combine mythology with scientific description within the hierarchic Universe described in the cosmological works. These works, which are usually of a popular nature, have served as background for both popular literature and numerous miniature paintings. Other cosmographies such as those contained in the works of astronomers and mathematicians like al-Birûnî and Qutb al-Din al-Shirâzî are of a much more scientific nature being closely allied to the astronomy and physics developed by Muslim scientists but also staying within the bounds of the traditional Universe of Islamic cosmology.

In all of their diverse forms Islamic cosmology and cosmography have served as background, matrix and principle for the various Islamic sciences from geography to alchemy. They have made possible the linking of the particular sciences to the principles of the Islamic revelation and the creation of an integral civilization by Islam in which the various sciences have been cultivated without disrupting its unity, a civilization in which nature has been studied without destroying the harmony between man and his natural and cosmic environment.

**Geography and Geodesy**

Muslim studies in geography extend from a symbolic and sacred geography which views the earth as an image of the spiritual world to the most exact mathematical measurements of geographic coordinates and quantitative geomorphic studies. Cast within the world view of Islam and centred most of all upon the vast confines of dâr al-islâm, the science of geography drew from many
sources, such as Babylonia, Greece, India and especially Persia. Pre-Islamic Persian geography had already influenced pre-Islamic Arabic geographical ideas, as the Arabic word *barsakh*, which comes from Pahlavi *farsang*, reveals, and it played a central role in early Islamic geography as well. The ancient Persians saw the earth as an angel and possessed a highly developed ‘visionary geography’.

Their division of the world into seven circular ‘regions’ (*kishtwars*) was a terrestrial reflection of the sevenfold spiritual hierarchy and left its deep effect upon geographers of the Islamic period, who were fully aware of the symbolic significance of seven in both the Greek scheme of the climates and the Persian scheme of the *kishtwars*. Likewise, the central cosmic mountain of the ancient Persians became transformed into the Mount Qāf mentioned in the Quran, and at least among a great number of Islamic geographers the central region of the world was conceived in a new fashion so as to encompass Mecca, the centre of the Islamic world and the point where for Muslims the heavenly axis touches the terrestrial plane. In ‘Islamicizing’ the natural world about it Islam in fact incorporated much of the symbolic and sacred geography of the traditions before it, sanctifying them anew through the power of the new revelation. How many mountains, lakes and other distinct *loxi* can be found today in the Islamic world which are of particular religious significance now and were also of special religious significance in the traditions which preceded Islam!

While sacred geography goes back mostly to the origins of the Islamic revelation and its early expansion within the land destined to become the


---

12. See S. H. Nasr, ‘La cosmographie en Iran pré-islamique et islamique, le problème de la continuité
home of classical Islam, descriptive and quantitative geography, which is considered as 'scientific' geography today, begins essentially in the Abbasid period with the translation of Indian, Persian and Greek geographical texts. The rendering into Arabic of the Sūryasiddhānta as well as other Indian astronomical texts acquainted Muslims with Indian geography, from which they learned most of all the calculation of longitudes from Ujjain. As for Persian sources, although no names of specific geographical works have survived, the knowledge of Sassanid geography among Muslims was widely extended, as can be seen in the names of many areas such as the Indian Ocean, which they called bahr al-fārs, the 'Persian Sea', following Sassanid examples. The Iranian influence was particularly strong in maritime literature, as can be seen in the survival of numerous Persian words such as bandar (port) and nākhudā (captain of a ship) in Arabic geographical works.

As far as Greek sources are concerned, the Muslims had an intimate acquaintance with the Geography of Ptolemy, which was translated several times into Arabic, as well as the geography of Marinus of Tyre. Moreover, they were familiar with such works as the Timaeus of Plato and the De Caelo and Meteorology of Aristotle with all the geographical knowledge these texts contained. The descriptive geography of such men as Strabo, however, was never translated into Arabic. Islamic works drew from Greek sources mostly for mathematical geography and from Persian sources for descriptive geography. Thanks to the ease of travelling over the vast areas covered by dār al-islām, Islam produced its own Strabo's and gained a great deal more knowledge of geography than was ever accessible to the civilizations preceding it, a knowledge which it then fitted into the theoretical patterns inherited from both the Greeks and the Persians.

The earliest Islamic geographical works, properly speaking, belong to the early 3rd/9th century, especially to the reign of al-Ma'mūn.
Plate 14. Spain and North Africa according to the map of al-Istakhri.

Plates 15a and 15b. The Persian Gulf according to the map of al-Istakhri.
During his caliphate the map of the world was drawn, entitled ‘the Ma’mūnic map’ (al-ṣūrat al-ma’mūniyyah), which is now lost but which was seen by Abu’l-Ḥasan al-Masʾūdi who considered it more accurate than that of Ptolemy. During this time also several other major works on geography appeared on the scene, some written by philosophers such as al-Kindi and Ahmad al-Sarakhshi and others contained in the astronomical works of such men as Abū ‘Abdallāh al-Battānī, Abu’l-ʿAbbās al-Farghani and Ibn Yūnus. These works were both descriptive and mathematical, the descriptive works being often in the form of itineraries such as the al-Masālik wa’l-mamālīk of Ibn Khurdādhbih, and the mathematical works following mostly upon the model of Ptolemy. Of the latter group the most important in this early period is without doubt the Ṣūrat al-ṣūrat al-ard (The Figures of the Earth) of Muḥammad ibn Mūsā al-Khwārizmī. Also among works of this period dealing extensively with mathematical geography may be mentioned al-ʿAʿlāq al-nafisah (The Book of Precious Things) of Ibn Rustah.

During the 4th/10th and 5th/11 centuries geography developed extensively as actual observations of various parts of the world, accumulation of earlier studies and continuous research by Muslim scientists themselves made possible a notable expansion of the horizons of geography. Great historians such as ‘Ahmad al-Yaʾqūbi also wrote on geography as an adjunct to history. Natural historians like Abu’l-Ḥasan al-Masʾūdi, who has been called the Muslim Pliny, combined cosmology, history and geography in a single encyclopaedia entitled Murūj al-dhahab (Prairies of Gold) which set an example for centuries to follow.

This was also the period during which the first Persian work on geography, called Hudūd al-ʿālam (Limits of the World), was written by an anonymous author based on the earlier work of Abū Ishāq al-Istakhri who belonged to a class of geographers like Abū Zayd al-Balkhī and Ibn Ḥawqal. These latter figures tried to give a more distinct Islamic colour to geography and usually limited themselves to Islamic lands.

A new chapter was also opened in the field of the geography of the seas during this formative period as Arab and Persian sailors made extensive journeys to such far away lands as Java, Sumatra and China, not to speak of India. From this sea-faring there issued both popular tales and scientific descriptions contained in such works as the Akhbār al-Ṣīn (Reports on China) and Akhbār al-Hind (Reports on India) of Sulaymān the Merchant and the famous ‘Ajāʾib al-hind (Wonders of India) of Buzurg ibn Shahriyār.

Plate 16. The province of Fars according to the map of al-Istakhri.

Plate 17. Western Asia and the Eastern Mediterranean according to the map of Ibn Hawqal.

Plate 18. Central Asia and Transoxiana according to the map of Ibn Ḥawqal.

13. See F. E. Peters, Allah's Commonwealth, New York, 1973, pp. 344ff. For Islamic geography in general see Nafis Ahmad, Muslim Contributions to Geography, Lahore, 1947; also S. Maqboul Ahmad and Fr. Taeschner, 'Djughraftya', in Encyclopaedia of Islam (new edition). See furthermore, the important study of A. Miquel, La géographie humaine du monde musulman jusqu’au milieu du 11e siècle, Paris, 1967, in which (pp. 4-33) special attention is paid to the diverse sources for the study of geography among Muslims.

Râmhuruzi. The knowledge gained by these means brought Muslims face to face with the deficiencies which existed in the Greek material they had inherited and had a role to play in the new synthesis the Muslims were able to make from Greek, Persian and Indian geography and their own observations and studies.

The height of Islamic geographical studies of this early period is to be found in the writings of the peerless Abû Rayḥân al-Bīrûnî, at once master of mathematical, descriptive and cultural geography. Not only is al-Bīrûnî’s *Tahdîd nihâyat al-‘amâkin* (*The Determination of the Coordinates of Cities*)\(^\text{15}\) the foremost Islamic work on mathematical geography, but throughout the incomparable *India*, the *Chronology of Ancient Nations* and the *Mas‘ūdic Canon* numerous pages are devoted to geography discussed with the precision and care that characterize all of the works of this master scientist and scholar.

From the 6th/12th century until the beginning of the European expansion during the Renaissance marks the period of elaboration and systematization in geography among Muslims during which such cosmographical encyclopaedias as the *Nukhbat al-dahr* (*The Selection of the Age*) of Shams al-Dîn al-Dimashqî and ‘Ajâ‘ib al-buldân (*The Wonders of the Lands*) of Zakariyyâ’ al-Qazwîni saw the light of day. But it was also the age which saw original geographers such as Abû’l-Fida‘ and especially Abû ‘Abdallâh al-Idrisî, the Moroccan geographer who served at the court of Roger II in Sicily, for whom he wrote his *Kitâb al-rujâ‘î* (*The Book of Roger*). The world map prepared by al-Idrisî, based upon both Hellenistic and earlier Islamic sources, marks the

height of cartography in Islam and the apogee of Islamic geography in this domain.

Also to this period belongs the incomparable geographical dictionary of Yaqūt entitled 
Muḍjam al-buldān (Dictionary of the Lands), which is still an indispensable tool of research for modern scholars. This work incorporated a great deal of local information which had been collected within the works on local history and geography so typical of this age. Of course not all the descriptions of this period were local, for this was also the age of great travellers, foremost among them Ibn Baṭṭūṭah, who set out from Tangiers and reached as far east as India and possibly China. In his remarkable Tuhfat al-nuzār (The Gift of Observers, usually known as Travels)\(^{16}\) he provides extensive geographical and topographical information, not to speak of material on history, religion, ethnography and the like, which make of this work one of the most outstanding in the mediaeval period.

Just before the advent of the European Renaissance Muslims made notable advances in nautical geography as seen in the well-known al-‘Umdat al-mahriyyah (The Pillars of al-Mahri) of Sulaymān al-Mahri and especially Kitāb al-fawā’id fi ʿusūl ʿilm al-bahr wa’l-qawā’id (The Book of Benefits Concerning the Principles and Foundations of the Science of the Sea) of Ibn Mājīd.\(^{17}\) The influence of works of this period in translation of Kitāb al-fawā’id fi ʿusūl al-bahr wa’l-qawā’id, together with an introduction on the history of Arab navigation, . . . and a glossary of navigational terms, London, 1971.


\(^{17}\) See G. R. Tibbetts, Arab navigation in the Indian Ocean before the coming of the Portuguese, being a
the West is reflected in such meteorological terms as typhoon (from the Arabic tryside) and monsoon (from mawsim). Ibn Majid also guided the boat of Vasco de Gama from Malindi in East Africa to Calicut in India. But the very entrance of the Portuguese upon the scene signalled the decline of Muslim sea power and also nautical geography at least until the Ottoman period.

From the 9th/10th century onward geographical works continued to be written mostly in Persian by the Persians and Indians and also in Persian, Turkish and occasionally Arabic by the Ottomans. The most original geographical work of the period belongs to the Ottoman writers. Some like Ibn al-Asiq, the author of Manazir al-Alam (Views of the World) followed the models of earlier works like the ‘Ajā’ib al-makhlūqāt (The Wonders of Creation) of al-Qazwini but added new material on Anatolia and the Balkans not found in earlier Muslim sources. Others like the Khitay-namah (Treatise on China) of Sayyid ‘Ali Akbar Khitā’i gave a fresh geographical description of the journey to China.

But the most amazing geographical contribution of this period is perhaps the cartographical works of Pir Muḥyī al-Dīn Ra’īs, produced in the early 10th/16th century, containing maps of Africa and America, which
continue to astonish modern scholars. The second Ra'is, Sayyid 'Ali, entitled Kātib-i Rūm, also made worthy contributions to marine geography in his *al-Muḥit* (*The Circumference*). This late Ottoman tradition of geography reached its height with the *Jihān-numā* of the 11th/17th century author Ḥājji Khalīfāh, which clearly reflects the transition from mediaeval to modern geography and which was completed and printed in the 12th/18th century with the help of European sources. This work was contemporary with the monumental *Seyāḥat-nāmeh* (*Travel Accounts*) of Ewliyā Čelebi in which a synthesis is made of the geography of the day. In geography as in few other fields Islamic science not only developed and transmitted some of the fruit of its endeavours to the West, but also drew from Renaissance and even later Western sources before the onslaught of the West upon the Islamic world. It also made this transition in a manner that was not totally disruptive as was the case in so many other of the sciences.

Plate 20a. An Ottoman compass.

Plate 20b. A Syrian compass.

Plate 20c. A late Persian compass.
Plate 21. Map of America and West Africa according to Piri Reis.

Figure 18. Europe and North Africa according to Piri Reis.
As far as geodesy is concerned the Islamic geographers made major contributions to it as well, and in fact al-Bīrūnī may be considered as the founder of the science of geodesy. Muslims were interested in mathematical studies of the features of the surface of the earth as well as in determining the latitude and longitude of cities, the height of mountains, the diameter of the earth, etc., from the moment they inherited the Greek, Indian and Persian works on the subject. But they were also interested in some of these problems for the practical purpose of orientating themselves in the direction of Mecca and finding the various times of day in order to perform the prescribed prayers and to fast properly. Treatises on how to determine the length of day abound in Islamic languages, as do works on ways of determining the direction of Mecca from various latitudes and longitudes.

But Muslims did not remain content with only these problems, despite their central importance. They spent much effort in refining means of measuring latitudes and longitudes of cities and other geographical features. Already during the 3rd/9th century they had measured a degree of latitude at about 36°N to be 2877 feet basing themselves on simultaneous observations at Palmyra and Raqqā. Al-Bīrūnī, who devoted about fifteen books to geodesy and mathematical geography, improved on these measurements, while Ibn Yūnus, almost his contemporary, devoted careful studies to the measurement of longitudes. By the 7th/13th century Abu’l-‘Alī al-Marrākushī had composed his ḫāmi‘ al-ḥabādī wa’l-ghāyāt (Sum of the Beginnings and the Ends) as well as his treatise on astronomical instruments which caused Sarton to describe his works as ‘the most important contribution to mathematical geography – not only in Islam but anywhere.’

As far as the measurement of the diameter of the earth is concerned the Muslims knew earlier Greek and Indian methods. But a new effort at measurement was made in the Sinjar plain of Syria in the 3rd/9th century by a team under the direction of the sons of Mūsā ibn Shākir, which improved upon the earlier measurements. Likewise, the astronomers al-Battānī and al-Farghānī measured the diameter of the earth. But again it was al-Bīrūnī who in several of his works described means of measuring the diameter of the earth and finally carried out the method himself while in India, coming up with the answer of about 25,000 miles, which would have been very accurate if the earth were not a geoid. Al-Bīrūnī also devised ingenious methods of measuring mountains and other elevations so that he truly deserves to be named the founder of geodesy, a science which numerous Islamic geographers and astronomers pursued in the centuries which followed him.


Chapter IV
Natural History

Geology – Mineralogy – Botany – Zoology

The analytical approach of modern science during the past few centuries and especially since the nineteenth century has eclipsed almost completely the knowledge of the unity and interrelatedness of the natural order, a unity to which in fact science has turned its back in quest of ever more refined quantitative knowledge. As a result, natural history, which embraces the various ‘kingdoms’ of nature in a global view based upon their undeniable organic unity, has been nearly forgotten despite the long tradition of natural history in the West. Only the catastrophic ecological crisis which has come to the surface during the past decade has caused a belated interest, within certain circles, in natural history as the repository of a wisdom concerning nature, a wisdom of which the modern world is in profound need if it is to regain the vision of nature as a totality and an organic whole.

In Islamic civilization, natural history has always played a central role as the integrating and all-embracing matrix within which particular descriptive sciences of nature have been cultivated, from mineralogy to zoology. It has sought to integrate particular forms of knowledge of the natural order into universal principles of a metaphysical and cosmological nature. And it has sought to study nature not only with respect to other physical and biological forms and vis-à-vis man’s relation to these forms but most of all as the ‘signs’ or ‘portents’ (āyāt) of God to be contemplated rather than simply analyzed. In Islamic civilization, natural history has always played a central role as the integrating and all-embracing matrix within which particular descriptive sciences of nature have been cultivated, from mineralogy to zoology. It has sought to integrate particular forms of knowledge of the natural order into universal principles of a metaphysical and cosmological nature. And it has sought to study nature not only with respect to other physical and biological forms and vis-à-vis man’s relation to these forms but most of all as the ‘signs’ or ‘portents’ (āyāt) of God to be contemplated rather than simply analyzed. In Islamic civilization, natural history has always played a central role as the integrating and all-embracing matrix within which particular descriptive sciences of nature have been cultivated, from mineralogy to zoology. It has sought to integrate particular forms of knowledge of the natural order into universal principles of a metaphysical and cosmological nature. And it has sought to study nature not only with respect to other physical and biological forms and vis-à-vis man’s relation to these forms but most of all as the ‘signs’ or ‘portents’ (āyāt) of God to be contemplated rather than simply analyzed. In Islamic civilization, natural history has always played a central role as the integrating and all-embracing matrix within which particular descriptive sciences of nature have been cultivated, from mineralogy to zoology. It has sought to integrate particular forms of knowledge of the natural order into universal principles of a metaphysical and cosmological nature. And it has sought to study nature not only with respect to other physical and biological forms and vis-à-vis man’s relation to these forms but most of all as the ‘signs’ or ‘portents’ (āyāt) of God to be contemplated rather than simply analyzed.

In Islamic civilization, natural history has always played a central role as the integrating and all-embracing matrix within which particular descriptive sciences of nature have been cultivated, from mineralogy to zoology. It has sought to integrate particular forms of knowledge of the natural order into universal principles of a metaphysical and cosmological nature. And it has sought to study nature not only with respect to other physical and biological forms and vis-à-vis man’s relation to these forms but most of all as the ‘signs’ or ‘portents’ (āyāt) of God to be contemplated rather than simply analyzed.


Mas'ūdī, to literary works such as those of al-Jāhiz, to philosophical treatises such as the Shifā’ (The Book of Healing) of Ibn Sinā, in which major sections are devoted to the subject. The treatises on natural history also vary as to content, some emphasizing descriptions of nature, others symbolic and mythological narratives, and yet others the cosmological and philosophical aspects of the study of nature. But they are all united in their interest in the interrelation between natural forms, the inner forces (nafs or ‘soul’) which governs each kingdom and the significance of natural forms as guideposts to a knowledge beyond the world of nature, this being both metaphysical and moral. Muslim natural historians were thus concerned, beyond their descriptive studies of animals, plants, rocks and mountains, with both the symbolic significance of the natural world and the lessons man can learn morally and spiritually from the study of natural forms.³

The underlying theme of the works on natural history, which recurs over and over again, is the ‘three kingdoms’ (ma'ādlih) and the various ‘souls’ which dominate, move and determine the life patterns of each kingdom. The Muslims adopted elements from Aristotle and other Greek sources and integrated them into a total science of the Universe which embraced the whole ‘chain of being’, beginning with the angels and ending with the saint in whom creation returns to its source.⁴ It was in fact Ibn Sinā who in his Shifā’ treated all the three kingdoms systematically for the first time in a single work, adding to the zoological studies of Aristotle and the botany of Theophrastus his own study of the mineral kingdom which in its Latin version as De Mineralibus was considered for many centuries in the West to be a work of Aristotle.⁵

As for the various souls and their faculties, this doctrine was also adopted from the works of the Alexandrian commentators upon the De Anima of Aristotle but was elaborated and

3. The Muslims inherited the traditions of natural history of both the Greeks, principally Aristotle and Pliny, and the Indians and Persians. The latter school emphasized likewise the moral and spiritual lessons to be learned from nature. This type of natural history was transmitted to Islam most of all through the Kalīlah wa Dimnah (The Tales of Bidpai) which was translated from Sanskrit into Pahlavi, from Pahlavi into Arabic and from Arabic into Persian and many other languages both Islamic and Western.


5. See E. J. Holmyard and D. C. Mandeville, Avicennae. De congelatione et conglutinatione lapidum, being sections of the Kitāb al-Shifā’, Paris, 1927. Muslims strangely enough did not have a thorough knowledge of the Botany of Theophrastus, in contrast to the zoological works of Aristotle, which they knew well. But that did not prevent them from integrating the science of the world of plants and animals as envisaged separately by the earlier Greek scientists into a whole embracing all the three kingdoms.
systematized by Muslim philosophers, especially al-Fārābī and Ibn Sinā. The ‘faculty psychology’ of Muslim philosophers and natural historians meant that the life-giving force found within nature came from a reality beyond the material world itself. In fact the various ‘souls’ are so many aspects and powers of the one World Soul which is responsible for the qualitative differentiation between forms and their life patterns. Otherwise the material aspect of natural forms is no more than so many combinations of the four elements, fire, air, water and earth. It is the wedding of a particular soul to each combination of the elements that constitutes its particular character and gives each being its distinct features, just as from another point of view the totality of each natural form is a reflection of an archetype belonging to the spiritual empyrean.

The various faculties of the souls which dominate the three kingdoms can be summarized as follows:⁶

---


7. On the main geological ideas of the Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’, al-Birūnī and Ibn Sinā see Nasr, *An Introduction to

---

Each mineral, plant and animal possesses some of these faculties and grows in perfection to the degree that these faculties become more fully manifest in it. Only in man are all these faculties present in their fullness in addition to the ‘rational faculty’ (*al-nafs al-naṭiqah*) which distinguishes man from the animals in a fundamental and not just an accidental manner.

**Geology**

The home of the above-mentioned kingdoms is the earth, so Muslim natural historians usually turned to a study of geology before discussing any of the three kingdoms. It is surprising to realize how many geological observations and ideas which came to be substantiated during later centuries were already known to Muslims. Of course the Muslim scientists never operated within a deistic world in which the hands of God were, so to speak, cut off from His creation. They therefore did not need to have recourse to such hypotheses as uniformitarianism and ‘horizontal’ biological evolution, which parade as scientific ‘facts’ today but which are in reality a means by which secularized man fills the gap created by his banning of the Divine Cause from the natural order.

Muslim writings on geology, which are usually found in the same sources as those of natural history and of course also in works on mineralogy, show a clear understanding of the gradual character of geological change, of the major transformations which have taken place on the surface of the earth, including the changing of lands into sea and of sea into land, of the importance at the same time of many cataclysms such as violent earthquakes, which have transformed the sculpture of the surface of the earth, and of the importance of rocks as a record of the earth’s geological history.⁷ Concerning the importance of records contained in rocks, al-Birūnī, one of the foremost of Muslim geologists, writes, ‘We have

---

*Islamic Cosmological Doctrines*, pp. 87–88; 141–144; 244–246.

As far as earthquakes are concerned many special works have been devoted to them. See for example Jalāl al-Dīn al-Suyūṭī, *Kashf al-ṣalālah ‘an waqf al-zalzalah*, ed. by ‘Abd al-Lāṣif al-Sa’dānī, Fez, 1971. Translated with annotations by S. Najjar as ‘Kashf aṣ-ṣaḥlāḥ ‘an waqf az-zalzala (Traité du tremblement de terre), *Cahiers du Centre Universitaire de la Recherche Scientifique* (Rabat), no. 3, 1973–74.
to rely upon the records of rocks and vestiges of the past to infer that all these changes should have taken place in very very long times and under unknown conditions of cold and heat.\textsuperscript{78}

Muslim students of geology were also fully aware of the origin of fossils. Usually in Western histories of geology and palaeontology it is mentioned that after millennia of confusion concerning the origin of fossils, suddenly in the 12th/18th century a clear scientific explanation was provided. Actually nothing could be further from the truth if Islamic sources are taken into account. The Epistles of the Brethren of Purity written in the 4th/10th century had already described fossils as remains of sea animals which had become petrified in a place which is now land but which had been a sea in bygone ages.

Similarly, Muslim scientists were fully aware of many major geological phenomena such as weathering, the difference in the degree of resistance of various mountain formations to the weathering process, the accumulation of sand created by wind and water in their endless action upon rocks, and finally the coming into being of sedimentary rocks through this process. Ibn Sinā described carefully his own observations along the banks of the River Oxus concerning the gradual petrification and solidification of clay, and explained the formation of sedimentary rocks correctly.\textsuperscript{8}

Perhaps the most remarkable geological observation ever made by a Muslim scientist, however, is al-Birūnī’s identification of the Ganges Plain in India as a sedimentary deposit. After studying extensively all aspects of India including its natural forms al-Birūnī wrote in his unique work \textit{Tahqiq mā l’il-hind (India)}: ‘One of these plains is India, limited in the south by the above-mentioned Indian Ocean, and on three sides by lofty mountains, the waters of which flow down to it. But if you see the soil of India with your own eyes and meditate on its nature, if you consider the rounded stones found in the earth however deeply you dig, stones that are huge near the mountains and where the rivers have violent current, stones that are of smaller size at a greater distance from the mountains and where the streams flow more slowly, stones that appear pulverized in the shape of sand where the streams begin to stagnate near their mouths and near the sea – if you consider all this, you can scarcely help thinking that India was once a sea, which by degrees had been filled up by the alluvium of the streams.’\textsuperscript{10}

One cannot discuss geology among Muslims without mentioning their special interest in underground waters and water systems. This is particularly true of Persia where Islam inherited the vast underground water system (\textit{qanāţ}) from the Sassanids. But Muslim scientists did not remain content simply with the practical applications of this system to agriculture. They also made scientific studies which are related to both hydrology and geology, one of the most remarkable being that of al-Karaji (usually known as al-Karkhi).\textsuperscript{11} In the work of al-Karaji, as in similar treatises, one observes that wedding between theoretical and practical knowledge and also between various disciplines ranging from mathematics to geology which characterizes Islamic science in all its major facets.

\textbf{Mineralogy}

The study of the three kingdoms usually begins with mineralogy, which in Islam is closely interrelated with alchemy, chemistry and metallurgy on the one hand and medicine on the other. Works concerned with mineralogy in various Islamic languages are usually lapidaries with numerous references not only to mineralogy but also to petrography and metallurgy. Moreover, works on alchemy are also concerned with mineralogy, and often it is not easy to draw a clear distinction between them. Even the term \textit{hajar} (stone) which is used in the title of many lapidaries also refers to the Philosophers’ Stone and is as much of a petrographical term as an alchemical one.

The Muslims inherited a vast literature on mineralogy and related fields from the Greeks, Persians and Indians, works or fragments associ-
ated with such names as Sokatos, Xeuskrates, Bolos Demokritos and Alexander of Tralles, as well as Zoroaster, Jāmāsp and Manūchihr. Moreover, such important medical and pharmacological sources as Dioscorides and Galen, and religious works such as the Paḥlavī Dāstōstān-ī dēnīk, served also as sources of knowledge of mineralogy among Muslims. But the two most important and influential works which determined much of the colour of lapidaries written by Muslims are the Lapidary of Aristotle, which exists in many recensions, and the pseudo-Aristotelian Kitāb sirr al-asrār, whose Latin translation by Roger Bacon under the title of Secretum Secretorum was well known in the West. Both works are compilations from Persian, Syriac and Greek sources of late Antiquity having little to do with the mineralogy of the immediate school of Aristotle. Both deal primarily with the occult properties of substances, especially minerals.

Works written by Islamic scientists and scholars on mineralogy and related fields begin in the 3rd/9th century with two treatises by the philosopher-scientist al-Kindī, Risālāh fī amwāl al-jawāhir al-thamīnī wā ghayrīhā (Treatise on Various Types of Precious Stones and Other Kinds of Stones) and Risālāh fī amwāl al-hijārah wāl-jawāhir (Treatise on Various Types of Stones and Jewels). Al-Kindī also wrote an important treatise on metallurgy and the art of making swords, this being the first book of its kind in Arabic. These works were followed by treatises on the subject of minerals and stones by al-Jāhīz, Naṣr ibn Ya’qūb al-Dinawarī, the philosopher and physician Muḥammad ibn Zakariyyā’ al-Rāzī, the Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’, who devoted one of their Epiptles to it, and Muḥammad ibn Aḥmad al-Tamimi whose Kitāb al-murshid (The Guide-Book) is a major work on minerals, stones and metals and is quoted by numerous later authors. But the most outstanding works in this field belong to Ibn Sinā and al-Bīrūnī. The first dealt extensively with the process of generation and the description of metals and minerals and their classification in his Shīfāʾ (The Book of Healing) and also in the second book of the Qānūn (Canon); the second wrote the Kitāb al-jamāhir fi maʾrifat al-jawāhir (The Book of the Multitude of Knowledge of Precious Stones), which is considered by many as the most notable Muslim work on the subject. In this unique work, al-Bīrūnī combines the philological, mineralogical, physical, medical, and even philosophical approaches, and he studies minerals from all these points of view. He even makes careful measurements of the specific weights of minerals, something which belongs more to the realm of physics than mineralogy and which we shall therefore treat later, in our chapter on physics.


14. The treatise is called Risālāh fī amwāl al-suwyāf al-ḥadīd (Treatise on Various Kinds of Steel Swords). See A Treatise on Swords and Their Essential Attributes, a Rare and Original Work of al-Kindī, the Great Arab Philosopher, ed. by R. M. N. Ehsan Elahie, Lahore, 1962.

15. For a scholarly and thoroughly documented history of mineralogy among Muslims see Ullmann, op. cit., pp. 114ff.

16. See Holmyard and Mandeville, De congelatione et conglutinatione lapidum. Ibn Sinā divided minerals into four classes (aqṣām): stones (ajhār), sulphurs (kabārīt), salts (amldāḥ) and solubles (dāhībāt).

17. For this reason numerous studies have been devoted to various aspects of this work. See for example, F. Krenkow, ‘The Chapter on Pearls in the Book of Precious Stones by al-Bīrūnī’, Islamic Culture, vol. 15, 1941, pp. 399–421; and vol. 16, 1942, pp. 11–36; and Taqī al-Dīn al-Ḥilālī, ‘Die Einleitung zu al-Bīrūnis Steinbuch’, in Sammlungen orientalistischer Arbeiten, Heft 7, Leipzig, 1941. For other studies on this work see Ullman, op. cit., p. 121, ft. nt. 1; and S. H. Nasr, al-Bīrūnī: An Annotated Bibliography, Tehran, 1974, pp. 87–94.
Work on mineralogy continued in the 6th/12th and 7th/13th centuries with treatises by such men as Abū’l-Abbās al-Tīfāshī, Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī and Abū’l-Qāsim al-Qāsānī (Kāshānī). Likewise, the compilers and cosmomarshgraphers who followed, such men as al-Qazwīnī, Ḥamdallāh Mustawfī, Shams al-Dīn al-Īk̄ānī, Ibn al-Āthīr, Ibn al-Jawzī and Dā‘ūd al-Anṭākī all devoted sections of their writings to mineralogy, drawing mostly from the earlier sources of the 4th/10th and 5th/11th centuries.

Even after the Muslim world became divided into several empires, works in this field continued, often of a more local character, but nevertheless based on the earlier sources, which were widely known throughout the Islamic world. In the 9th/15th century the Persian scientist Muḥammad ibn Manṣūr Shirāzī, who lived in India, wrote a treatise in Persian on precious stones, and in the 12th/18th century the Persian Sufi and scholar Shaykh ‘Alī Hazīn, who had also migrated to India, continued this tradition with another Persian work, this time on pearls. In the Ottoman world also works of this kind were written, such as the treatise of Yahyā ibn Muḥammad al-Ǧaffārī, in Turkish but based on the text of Ṭūsī, and that of Muḥammad ibn al-Muḥārīr al-Qazwīnī, written in Persia, for Sultan Selim I. In Persia itself most of the interest in mineralogy in this later period was in the direction of either medicine or alchemy. As for the Maghrib a major work on the subject appeared in the 11th/17th century by Imām Ahmad al-Maghribī, who drew heavily upon al-Anṭākī. This tradition has survived to this day in the Islamic world in ‘folk’ medicine, in the use of jewels and in many other aspects of daily living, while the theoretical foundations of this ancient science of minerals became gradually replaced by modern theories in the 13th/19th century.

The Muslim lapidaries are based on a view of the Universe very different from that of modern science and cannot be understood if seen only from the perspective of a purely quantitative science. In these works the qualitative aspect of stones is as real as their quantitative aspect. The colour, brilliance, texture and form of a stone belong as much to its ontological reality as do its weight or size. Moreover, there is a sympatheia between various orders of being which cannot be reduced to external, measurable relations and which determines the role of certain stones in calming the soul or causing joy or evoking other psychological states. If these treatises wander from ‘scientific’ descriptions of a particular stone to occult properties which appear as fantasy from the point of view of modern science, it is precisely because modern man has lost sight of that sympatheia between various objects and levels of cosmic existence which causes interactions and effects to take place, effects which cannot be determined by quantitative means alone. The ‘science of the properties of things’ was never limited in the Muslim mind to what was measurable, although it naturally included this aspect of things. Rather, the ‘science of the properties of things’ (‘ilm khawāṣṣ al-ahṣāyā‘), which is so closely interwoven with mineralogy, is based on a vast vision of reality according to which the outward and the inward, the manifest and the occult aspects and properties of things, are all real and react with each other and with man in a Universe through whose arteries the Spirit never ceases to flow.

Botany

As in mineralogy so in botany the Muslims inherited a vast body of knowledge from Greek, Roman, Babylonian, Persian and Indian sources which they synthesized and made the basis for their own studies of the plant world. Muslim interest in plants was extensive for both agricultural and medical reasons. In fact in the earliest Muslim works on the sciences such as the Kitāb al-ḥudūd (The Book of Limits) of Ḥābir ibn Ḥayyān, botany (‘ilm al-nabāt) and agriculture (‘ilm al-filāḥah) are classified together and only later appear as separate sciences. Likewise, the earliest pharmacological studies are inseparable from the study of botany. Moreover, Muslim studies on botany range from the most ‘scientific’ descriptions to the study of the occult properties

18. Both Ṭūsī and Kāshānī wrote in Persian, the first the Tānsūkhühānā-yi Ilkhānī (The Il-Khānī Treadise on Mineralogy) and the second ‘Arḍ’s al-jawābīr wa nafā’s al-ātyāib (Brides of Jewels and Gems of Delicacies) which also contains an important section on the technology of tiles. But it seems that both works are based on an earlier 5th/11th century model.

of plants, as well as their symbolic and spiritual significance in the cosmos.

The most important pre-Islamic sources from which Muslim botanists drew information include the *Book of Agriculture* of Pseudo-Apollonius, an agricultural treatise attributed to Demokritos, the works of Aristotle and Theophrastus, the famous and influential *De Plantis* also attributed to Aristotle, the pharmacological works of Dioscorides and Galen, as well as the writings of Apollonios of Tyana. Of special significance for the rise of both botany and agriculture is the *Nabataean Agriculture* of Ibn Wahshiyah, concerned with ancient agricultural practices of the Near East combined with considerations belonging to the occult sciences, a work which exercised an immense influence upon later Muslim authors. Mention must also be made of Persian botanical knowledge, which reached the Muslims through both oral transmission and the pharmacopoeia.

Islamic works on botany begin in the 2nd/8th century with the treatises of Jābir ibn Ḥayyān on botany and agriculture. Also the philologists and grammarians of this period such as Abū Naḍr ibn Shumayl and Abū Zayd al-Anṣārī from Basra and Ibn al-Sikkiṭ from Kufa were interested in plants and assembled information about their morphology and properties as well as names. Of a similar nature is the *Kitāb al-nabāṭ wa’l-shajar* (*The Book of Plants and Trees*) of Abū Sa‘īd al-Āṣma‘ī.

From the 3rd/9th century onward medical works in Arabic also begin to appear with important sections devoted to plants and their medical benefits. The *Firdaws al-ḥikmah* (*Paradise of Wisdom*) of ‘Ali ibn Rabban al-Ṭabarī is noteworthy from this point of view as are several treatises of Ḥunayn ibn Iṣḥāq and during the following century of Rāzī, Ibn Juljul and ‘Ali ibn ‘Abbās al-Majūsī.

But the most important botanical treatise of the 3rd/9th century is probably the *Kitāb al-nabāṭ* (*The Book of Plants*) of Abū Hanifah al-Dinawari. This work, which combines a philological, historical and botanical approach in

its study of plants, is marked by its thoroughness and the care taken in the description of each specimen. It was read widely by later authors and has been quoted numerous times over the centuries.

In the 4th/10th century several philosophical studies of plants appeared. The Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’ devoted one of their *Epistles* to the morphology, genesis and manner of growth of plants as well as the numerical symbolism of their various parts and their place in the total cosmic order. Likewise, Ibn Sinā in the seventh chapter (*fann*) of the *Tabī‘iyyāt* (*Natural Philosophy*) of his *Shifā‘* (*Book of Healing*) dealt extensively with plants from both a philosophical and scientific point of view. In Spain also the philosophers were interested in botany. Ibn Bājjah was an authority in this field and wrote two works on the subject, the *Kitāb al-tajribatayn* (*The Book of the Two Experiences*) dealing with the medical properties of herbs and the *Kitāb fi‘l-nabāṭ* (*The Book on Plants*) with their physiology. Even Ibn Rushd had a special interest in botany and wrote a commentary on the *De Plantis*.

Andalusia and the Maghrib in general were also witness at this time to a series of major works related to plants, but from either the agricultural point of view, as with Ibn al-‘Awwām, or the pharmacological perspective, as with al-Ghāfiqi and Ibn al-Baytār. But these works are so important for botany itself that they must be mentioned here, although they are concerned, properly speaking, with other disciplines. These works systematized Muslim botanical knowledge up to the 6th/12th and 7th/13th centuries and are especially strong in their descriptions of the flora of Andalusia. Similarly in works that appeared at the same time in the eastern lands of Islam emphasis is naturally placed upon the flora of those regions. For example, the *Kitāb al-‘tibār* (*The Eastern Key*) of ‘Abd al-Laṭīf al-Baghdādī is particularly rich in its description of the plants of Egypt.

Plate 25. The opening page of the treatise on simples (drugs) by Ibn al-Baytār.

Plate 27. An illustration of an anthropomorphous flower from a Persian botanical treatise.

Plate 28. Vine from a Persian botanical treatise.

21. Ibn Sinā of course also dealt with plants in his pharmacological studies as did al-Bīrūnī in his *al-Ṣaydalah*. But these works will be treated later in the chapter on medicine.

Plate 29. An illustration of the iris and white lily.
From the 8th/14th century onward compilations of earlier studies and encyclopaedic works began in botany as in so many other fields of the Islamic sciences. The encyclopaedias of al-Qazwini, Shams al-Din al-Nuwayri, Hamdallāh Mustawfi, the Tuhfat al-ajā’ib (The Gift of Wonders) attributed to Ibn al-Athir, al-Juzūlī, ‘Umar ibn al-Wardī and many others devote special chapters to the study of plants, basing themselves mostly on the earlier studies mentioned above.

During the later Islamic centuries, the most important works of botany appeared mainly in Persian but also in Arabic and occasionally Urdu in the Indian sub-continent, where the profusion of vegetation offered a new opportunity for Muslim botanists to add a fresh chapter to the history of Islamic botany. Most of these later works have been neglected until now by the outside world, and even by scholars of other Muslim countries. But they display by their number as well as quality the richness of this later phase of botany which, while basing itself on the ideas of earlier Islamic botany, found itself in a new environment with a richness of flora and fauna not encountered by the earlier masters of this science who were accustomed to the drier climates and less varied plant life of Persia and the Arab lands.

Muslim studies on botany deal mostly with such questions as the classification of plants, their physiology, genesis and modes of growth, the description of their parts, their relation to geographical and climatic conditions and their medical as well as ‘occult’ properties. Also Muslim authors insisted upon studying the plant world with the aim of drawing spiritual and moral lessons from it as well as of contemplating its forms as parts of the vestigia Dei. It is noteworthy to remember the importance of plants in the Islamic paradise, the participation of plants in the resurrection discussed so extensively by Mullā Ṣadrā and others and the role of stylized plants in the sacred art of Islam. The spiritual significance of trees and flowers in Persian and Spanish gar-
dens, or in Arabic and Persian poetry, as well as in other aspects of Islamic art and in fact in the general life of Muslims, is inseparable from those aspects of botany which deal with the physical and medical properties of herbs. It is in fact all of these aspects together, from the most outward physical descriptions to the esoteric significance of the tree of Paradise, which together constitute the science of plants (ʾilm al-nabāṭ) as it came into being and developed in the Muslim world over the centuries.

Zoology

The study of zoology in its broadest sense among Muslims involves nearly every facet of Islamic civilization, from jurisprudence to literature and from art to medicine. Not only did the Muslims have an intimate acquaintance with the life and habits of domesticated animals, which in fact provide to this day the basis for the life of nomads—whether they be in Morocco, Arabia, or Persia—but they also lived with the animal kingdom in an intimacy which permitted its world to enter the inmost chamber of Islamic spirituality as expressed in art and literature and as depicted religiously in the role played by animals in both the Shariʿah and in eschatology. The very act of sacrifice, through which alone a Muslim can feed upon the animal kingdom, has sanctified animal life for Muslims, and the injunctions of the Shariʿah have placed many duties and responsibilities upon the shoulders of man in his treatment of animals. And even beyond everyday life and their utility to man animals play an important role in the Islamic paradise and also in this world as symbols of various spiritual realities and as theophanies. Many Western scholars have assumed that since Muslims did not produce systematic works on zoology, they lacked substantial knowledge of the animal kingdom. Such a superficial judgment limits the study of animals solely to the model developed later in the West. It is as if one were to say that the American Indians knew nothing about eagles because they did not write treatises on their anatomy, whereas in reality their knowledge of what an eagle really is transcends infinitely all the zoological treatises written on this solar bird. The same is true mutatis mutandis of Islam, although Muslims in addition to their symbolic study of animals also did write ‘scientific’ treatises about them.

The pre-Islamic Arabs already had much knowledge of certain animals such as the camel and the horse, as did the Persians, who were also to make major contributions to zoological studies during the Islamic period. The Muslims in general inherited three different traditions connected with the animal kingdom: the pre-Islamic Arabic, the Graeco-Alexandrian and the Indo-Persian. The early Arabic tradition combined interest in animals with questions of philology and genealogy. The Graeco-Alexandrian sources included a treatise on zoology attributed to Hippocrates, the Historia animalium of Aristotle translated into Arabic by Yahyā ibn al-Bīṭrīq, the treatise on animals of Theomnestos of Magnesia, the Sirr al-khaliqah (The Book of the Secret of Creatures) attributed to Apollonios of Tyana and certain Byzantine works.

The Indo-Persian tradition differed profoundly from the Greek, especially from the detailed descriptive and analytical works of Aristotle. The Oriental sources on animals were more concerned with the spiritual and moral

Plate 31. The lion and the jackal from the Kalilah wa Dimnah.
Plate 32. Elephants from the *Kalilah wa Dimnah*.

Plate 33. Owls from the *Kalilah wa Dimnah*. 
significance of animal life than the anatomy and classification of animals. The main work belonging to this tradition, namely the Kalilah wa Dimnah (Tales of Bidpai), which became a major literary masterpiece of both Arabic and Persian, reveals clearly the concern to learn not only about but also from animals and to study animals as creatures who share in man’s ultimate destiny and who have much to teach man concerning the wisdom of God and man’s duties on earth.

The Islamic tradition of zoology came into being by unifying the traditions Islam inherited from the Greeks, the pre-Islamic Arabs and the Indo-Persian world. The earliest works dating from the 2nd/8th century were mostly lexicographical in nature and were concerned especially with camels and horses. During the 2nd/8th and 3rd/9th centuries, philologists from both Basra and Kufa, men like Abū Naṣr ibn Shumayl, al-Aṣma’i, Ibn al-A’rābī, Abū ‘Ubayd ibn Sallām and Abū Ḥātim al-Sijistānī, all wrote on zoology. Likewise, many of the Mu’tazilite theologians of this period, such as the well-known figures Bishr ibn al-Mu’tamir and Abū Ishāq al-Nazzām, showed special interest in zoology.

But of course the foremost Mu’tazilite author who wrote on zoology was the celebrated literary figure al-Jāḥiz, whose Kitāb al-ḥayawān (The Book of Animals) is the most famous of its kind in Islam. Al-Jāḥiz assembled all the knowledge that existed before him from Arabic and Persian as well as Greek sources. He knew the studies of Aristotle and in fact referred to him and even criticized him. For al-Jāḥiz the goal of the study of zoology could not but be the demonstration of the existence of God and the wisdom inherent in His creation. Al-Jāḥiz made of zoology a branch of religious studies without, however, remaining oblivious to natural and scientific observations of the animal kingdom. He studied about 350 animals, which he described and classified into four categories according to the way they move. He was also, like Aristotle, much interested in animal psychology. In fact had his treatment of animals been more orderly he would have been worthy – to quote Pellat, the well-known modern Western authority on him – to stand as one of the foremost contributors to the science of zoology along with Aristotle and Buffon.

The philosopher al-Kindi was also interested in zoology and wrote several treatises on animals, as was his successor al-Fārābī, who in his classification of the sciences considered zoology as an independent discipline. But in the 3rd/9th and early 4th/10th century the most important contributions to zoology still came from compilers and natural historians rather than philosophers. This was the period when Ibn Qutaybah wrote his ‘Uyin al-akhbār (The Most Essential Information) with an important section devoted to zoology and when the ‘Aja’ib al-hind of Buzurg ibn Shahriyar Rāmhmuzī described for the first time in the Islamic world many exotic animals belonging both to the Indian world and to the mythology connected with that world. This is also the period when the influential Kitāb nuw’ūt al-ḥayawān (The Book of the Qualities of Animals) attributed to Aristotle was assembled.

From the middle of the 4th/10th century onward, however, philosophical works became the main repository for zoological studies. One of the longest epistles of the Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’ is devoted to animals. In this important treatise the Ikhwān make a profound study of animals in the total chain of being and also classify them according to several criteria, including the number of senses each animal has developed, the way each species is generated and the habitat of each species. They also analyze in detail the organs of many animals according to a perspective which is thoroughly teleological and which combines the approach of Aristotle with that of the Indo-Persian sources. Moreover, they devote a long section, exceptional in length alone within all the epistles, to ‘the dispute between man and the animals’. This beautifully written story, which is


24. During the same period Jābir ibn Ḥayyān also wrote a treatise on animals which is, however, lost and known only through citations from it in later works.

25. See Pellat, op. cit., p. 312.


27. See Nast, An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, pp. 93–95.
extremely timely today in the light of the ecological crisis, discusses the reasons given by man for his right to dominate and destroy the animal kingdom, and the response of the animals, which nullifies all the arguments of man based upon his purely human advantages such as the power of ratiocination or invention. Only when animals see that among men there are saints, who in returning to God also fulfil the deepest purpose of the creation of the animal kingdom, do they agree to obey man and to serve him. The moral of the story is that man has the right to dominate animals only on condition that he remain conscious of his vice-gerency (khilāfah), of his being God’s representative on earth and from another point of view the representative of all earthly creatures before God. Otherwise, he has no cogent reason whatsoever to rule and dominate other creatures and in fact will pay dearly for usurping a function to which he is not entitled save as the child of that Adam who, as the Holy Quran asserts, was taught the ‘names’ of all things.

The philosopher Ibn Sinā also devoted a major section of his Shifā’ (The Book of Healing), namely the eighth chapter of the ‘Natural Philosophy’ (Ṭabīʿīyyāt), to animals, and dealt especially with animal psychology and their physiology. Also in Spain both Ibn Bājjah and Ibn Rushd were interested in zoology, the first having written a separate treatise on zoology and the second commentaries upon the De Partibus animalium and De generatione animalium of Aristotle.

As in botany so in zoology, from the late 7th/13th and early 8th/14th centuries there began to appear a series of encyclopaedic works with major sections devoted to animals. In fact this was the beginning of a very active period in the composition of notable works devoted to zoology. Al-Qazwini, in his cosmography, devoted a special section to animals, in which he divided the animal kingdom according to each animal’s means of defence. Likewise al-Dimashqī, al-Nuwayrī, al-Jīldākī in his Durrat al-ghawwās (The Pearl of the Pearl-Diver), Ḥamdallāh Mustawfī, Ahmad ibn Yahyā al-ʿUmarī in his Masālik al-abṣār (Voyages of the Eyes), the anonymous Tuḥfat al-ʿajāʾib wa ṭūrfat al-gharaʾib (Gift of Wonders and Present of Marvels), ‘Alāʾ al-Dīn al-Juzūlī in his Maṭālī’ al-budūr (Ascensions of the Full Moon) and al-Qalqashandī in his Subḥ al-ašā’ (Dawn for the Weak-Sighted), all devoted notable sections to the study of animals.

Plate 34. Birds of India from the Bābur-nāmah.

29. ‘And He taught Adam all the names.’ Quran, II, 31.
30. This section became famous in the West as an independent work under the title Abbreviatio Avicennae de animalibus, translated by Michael Scot.
31. We do not mean to imply that after Ibn Rushd no specific treatises on animals appeared, as the well-known Ṭabāyīn al-hayawān (On the Nature of Animals) of Sharaʾ al-Zamān al-Marwāzī and Manāfīʿ al-hayawān (The Uses of Animals) of Ibn al-Durayhim show. The encyclopaedic and cosmographic type of work became, however, the main vehicle for natural history from the 8th/14th century onward.
Plate 35. A buzzard by Mansûr.

Plate 36. A partridge by Muhammad Ālim.
The foremost Muslim work of the later period, however, is the Hayāt al-hayawān al-kubrā (The Great Book on the Life of Animals) of Kamāl al-Dīn al-Damirī written in the late 8th/14th century.32 This work, which systematized all the studies which had preceded it, soon became, after the work of al-Jāhiz, the most popular Muslim treatise on animals and was translated into Persian and Turkish. Al-Damirī did not attempt a new classification of the animal kingdom, but in an orderly fashion made a study of the philological aspects of the names of animals, their religious and juridical status according to the Shari‘ah, traditions relating to them, their medical benefits and even magical use and significance in the interpretation of dreams. Because of its thoroughness and the combining of the religious, literary and scientific perspectives in studying animals, the Hayāt al-hayawān soon found a special place among Muslims. It was read by young and old alike, in order to learn of the wisdom of God and to gain better acquaintance with the animal world. It was consulted even for juridical purposes for the specific religious reason of knowing more about animals mentioned in the Holy Quran.33 It was a source of folklore and finally an inspiration for numerous artists who illustrated its text. Altogether al-Damirī’s work is the most complete and systematic extant work on zoology in the Islamic world.

During the last four or five centuries some treatises on zoology have appeared in Persian and Turkish as well as Arabic34 all written in the classical heartland of the Islamic world, but in this as in other domains of natural history the most interesting new works of this period belong to India. The Mogul Emperor Jahāngīr himself devoted sections of his Tūzuk-i Jahāngīr or Jahāngīr-nāmah (The Book of Jahāngīr) to natural history. Of these the most noteworthy concerns animals, which he described carefully.35 His studies were made more valuable by the fact that miniaturists who were at the Mogul court, especially Mansūr, drew miniatures of these same animals, producing works of great beauty which, without being naturalistic,36 captured the inner qualities and the very genius of the species in question. The illustrations to the descriptions in works such as those of Jahāngīr (although of an earlier period) are the first forms of Persian, Arabic and Turkish as well as Mogul miniatures and are like an extension of the art of calligraphy. They have never occupied the place which painting holds in Western art. But in the field of natural history and especially zoology they have played an important role of both an artistic and scientific nature and are a vivid reminder that not only is Islamic art a 'science'37 but that Islamic science is in the most profound sense an art, a sacred art which enables man to contemplate the visible cosmos as an icon revealing the spiritual world beyond it.

32. Numerous studies have been devoted to this work by J. de Somogy. See for example, ‘Ad-Damirī’s Ḥayāt al-hayawān. An Arabic Zoological Lexicon’, Osiris, vol. 9, 1950, pp. 33–43.

33. The Egyptian scholar Jalāl al-Dīn al-Suyūṭī made a poetic summary of this work which was translated into Latin and incorporated into the Hierosolicon composed in 1663. This latter work tried to study the animals which are mentioned in the Bible in the same way that al-Damirī had done for those mentioned in the Quran and Islamic traditions.

34. Notable among Arabic works of the later period is the Kitāb al-mustatraf (The Book of Novelties) of Muḥammad ibn Ahmād al-Ibshihi with a long section devoted to animals.

35. See M. A. Alvi and A. Rahman, Jahangir – the Naturalist, New Delhi, 1968. The study of animals by Muslims continued in India even after Jahāngīr, and in the 12th/18th century the great Persian Sufi saint and poet ‘Ali Ḥazīn wrote his work Khawāṣṣ al-hayawān in Persian while he was in India. There are numerous manuscripts in Indian libraries on this subject, mostly in Persian, which attest to activity in this field. Unfortunately most of them have not as yet been studied.

36. Islamic art is opposed to all forms of naturalism and in fact the external emulation of natural forms. Based on Unity, this art seeks to reflect Unity upon the plane of multiplicity rather than to paint an image, be it even a sacred one. See T. Burckhardt, Sacred Art, East and West, trans. by Lord Northbourne, London, 1967, chap. 4, where the principles of Islamic art are fully explained with unparalleled clarity.

37. Echoing the well-known dictum of St Thomas that ars sine scientia nihil.
Muslim interest in the animal kingdom is seen not only in art but also in literature. This is reflected most clearly in Persian literature, which in fact influenced Arabic and Turkish profoundly in this domain. Animals as symbols of cosmic qualities and of spiritual attitudes and as moral teachers to men are to be found already in Pahlavi works. But it is Persian which is particularly rich in this respect. In epics such as the Shāh-nāmah (Epic of Kings) of Firdawsi, in tales such as the Jawāmi’ al-ḥikâyāt (Collected Stories) of al-Awfi, and in folk literature such as the Sindbād-nāmah (The Story of Sinbad), animals play a major role. Moreover, in Sufi literature, animals occupy a special position as man’s companions during his earthly journey. The Ḥadiqat al-ḥaqiqah (The Garden of Truth) of Sanā’i, the numerous works of ‘Attār, especially the Mantiq al-tawār (The Conference of the Birds), in which the flight of thirty birds to their original abode symbolizes the journey of the soul towards God, the Mathnawi of Rūmī and the Baharīstān (The Garden of Spring) of Jāmī all attest to the role of animals on the highest level as elements necessary to the cosmic equilibrium and as theophanies of God’s Names and Qualities which the traveller upon the spiritual path ‘encounters’ and integrates into his being on his journey beyond the cosmic crypt.

At the other extreme one finds the study of animals for practical matters, ranging from hunting to medicine. Muslims developed especially the

Plate 38. Scorpions from a treatise on natural history, the Ikhtiyyārāt-i bâdi’i of ’Ali ibn al-Husayn, Zayn al-’Attār.

38. It is in the nature of Islamic civilization to integrate the sacred and the temporal, the sublime and the practical. There is no art for art’s sake nor science for science’s sake in Islam. Everything is for an end, which includes what is most ‘useful’ to man as an earthly creature and as a being destined for immortality. That is why there is so much zoology in Islamic sources, not only in the manner expected by Western students of Aristotle or Buffon and Cuvier but also in a manner that stretches from the way a Rūmī conceives of a lion or an Ibn ‘Arabi of a griffin to the way in which Ibn Sinā discusses the medical use of various animal products.
field of hippology, in which they wrote numerous treatises, such as those of al-ʿAṣmaʾi, ʿAbd al-Muʾmin al-Dimyāṭi, al-Jawāliqi and Ibn al-Mundhir. It is interesting to add in this case the special love of the nomadic Turks for horses, upon whom they even 'bestowed' sanctity. The horse of Sultan ʿUthmān II, which was buried at Uskūdar, was known as the 'saint of horses' (At-Ewliyāsī) and sick horses were brought there for cure. Muslims also excelled in ornithology, especially in the study of hawks. Numerous treatises were composed on this subject, mostly in Persian, some of which are still read in the West in courses on ornithology.

Practical concerns also led the Muslim physicians and pharmacologists to study animals. From ʿAlī ibn Rabban al-Ṭabarī, to Râzî, Ibn Sīnā, ʿĪsā ibn ʿAlī, Ibn Bukhṭīshū, Ibn al-Bayṭār, Dāʾūd al-Anṭāki and the later Ottoman, Safavid and Mogul medical authorities, the Muslims devoted considerable attention to both veterinary medicine and the use of animals in the treatment of man. A major source for the study of zoology among Muslims must be sought in Muslim medical works.

Altogether it can be said that despite the accusation of some scholars that Muslims did not cultivate zoology extensively, the study of animals occupies a very important chapter in the whole of Islamic civilization. It is related to the arts, from carpet weaving to poetry, to medicine and allied subjects, to general studies of natural history, and even to the esoteric and spiritual meditations on the cosmos and the Reality beyond. The Muslims have always had a profound awareness that animals along with plants and minerals are an

---

39. See the article 'faras' by F. Viré in the Encyclopaedia of Islam (new edition).

40. See the article 'bayzara' by F. Viré in the Encyclopaedia of Islam (new edition).
Plate 41. An anatomical study of the horse.
essential component of that equilibrium which
virgin nature manifests so openly and which
Islamic art recaptures in its sacred structures.
They have known that animals must be studied
not only to be utilized but also to be better under-
stood for their own sake, so that through them man
may gain greater knowledge of the Divine
Wisdom and also come to know better his own
inner nature, which is a total reflection of the
Divine Names and Qualities as the animals are
partial but often more direct reflections. Through
the study of the animal kingdom man is therefore
more fully able to realize his vice-regal role and
become aware of the great responsibility he must
exercise as the central being in the terrestrial
environment vis-à-vis the animal and plant
kingsoms.

Natural History and the Gradation of Being

One of the recurrent themes in Muslim
studies on natural history is the gradation of
beings within the three kingdoms, which in fact
re-echoes a universal traditional doctrine,41 and
along with the correspondence between the
microcosm and the macrocosm forms the basic
doctrinal background for the study of the various
forms manifested within nature. Such authors as
the Ikhwān al-Ṣafāʾ and Ibn Sinā go to great pains
to divide and sub-divide each kingdom according
to a scale which reveals an ever greater degree of
perfection. The mineral world ranges from the
most opaque substances to those which resemble
plant life, and plant life likewise stretches from
moss and algae, which resemble mineral growth, to
palm trees, in which there is a differentiation of
the sexes. The same holds true for the animal
kingdom, at whose apex are creatures which re-
semble man in certain aspects of their intelligence.
Muslim authors studied this gradation from the
point of view of the reflection of cosmic qualities
rather than just anatomical resemblances. That is
why the Ikhwān al-Ṣafāʾ considered the elephant
and not the monkey as the creature which stands
just below man in the scale of being.42

Furthermore, Muslim authors were also
aware that in the ‘great chain of being’ certain life
forms preceded others in time on the surface of the
earth. But they never believed in the theory of
evolution in the modern sense according to which
through some mysterious fashion the greater
‘evolves’ from the lesser.43 Evolutionary theory as
usually understood is a means to fill the void
created by modern man’s cutting off the hands of
God from His creation. For the Muslims,
however, any form of deism is absurd and God
never ceases to act within the world He has
brought into being. The scale of creatures and the
gradation of being has been, therefore, from the
beginning considered by Muslim authorities as a
vertical hierarchy ‘always’ present in a Now
which is above temporality while also becoming
manifested in time at different moments of
cosmic history through what might be called the
successive dreams of the World Soul. The ‘great
chain of being’ was formulated not to explain
away the Divine Cause but to enable man to
ascend towards the Source while being fully aware
of the total cosmic equilibrium of which natural
forms provide such striking evidence.

41. See A. K. Coomaraswamy, ‘Gradation, Evolution and
Reincarnation’, chapter 6 of his Am I my Brother’s
Keeper? (The Bugbear of Literacy, London, 1949),

42. See Nasr, An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological
Doctrines, p. 70.

43. Some Western scholars have, however, tried to read
19th century evolutionary ideas into Islamic texts. See
for example, Fr. Dietzici, Der Darwinismus im X. und
XI. Jahrhundert, Leipzig, 1878; see also J. Z. Wilczyn-
ski, ‘On the presumed Darwinism of Alberuni eight
hundred years before Darwin,’ Isis, vol. 50, part 4,
Part Three
The Cosmos and Its Mathematical Study
Mathematics and the Islamic Perspective

Any first-hand knowledge of Islamic civilization and particularly the Islamic sciences reveals the 'privileged position' of mathematics in the Islamic tradition. There are crystalline and geometric aspects to Islamic art and architecture, a love of arithmetic and numerical symbolism in both the plastic and auditory arts — especially poetry and music — an 'algebra' of language and of thought so clearly reflected in Arabic and also in many other Islamic languages, and numerous other tangible manifestations which make plain the central role of traditional mathematics in Islamic art and civilization and on the highest level in the spiritual 'style' of Islam so directly reflected in its sacred art.

This love for mathematics, especially geometry and number, is directly connected to the essence of the Islamic message, which is the doctrine of Unity (al-tawhid). God is One; hence the number one in the series of numbers is the most direct and most intelligible symbol of the Source. And the series of numbers themselves is a ladder by which man ascends from the world of multiplicity to the One. As a treatise summarizing the views of the Ikhwān al-Ṣafā' says, 'Verily the form of numbers in the souls of men corresponds to the forms of existents in the hylé. It is a sample from the upper world. Through its knowledge the ascetic reaches gradually the other mathematical and natural sciences and metaphysics. The science of numbers is the root of the sciences, the element of wisdom, the origin of the divine sciences, the pillar of meaning, the first elixir and the great alchemy.'

There is indeed a profound affinity between the Pythagorean concept of numbers and of geometric figures and certain intellectual perspectives within Islam. Pythagoras was Islamicized rapidly, for there existed already in the Islamic universe a dimension which could be described as 'Abrahamic Pythagoreanism', one in which the symbolic role of numbers and figures appeared in dazzling clarity, illuminated by Islamic gnosis which is precisely a blinding message of the One. Here we are not concerned so much with a question of historical borrowing as with spiritual and morphological affinity. The numerical symbolism of the letters of the Arabic alphabet connected with the sacred and esoteric science of al-jafr is said to

Figure 21. Geometric and numerical patterns used as the basis for the construction of various devices and instruments.

Figure 20. Cosmological and magical schemes relating Quranic verses to the symbolism of numbers according to Shams al-Din al-Buni.
have been codified by 'Ali ibn Abi Ṭālib and is inseparable from the form and inner meaning of certain passages of the Holy Quran. The traditional mathematics of the Pythagoreans only provided a powerful aid for the expression of a message which comes from the source of the Islamic revelation itself and a spiritual and dialectic style which is also inseparable from its sacred form.

That is why, from sublime treatises on metaphysics to pottery used in homes, one is faced everywhere in the Islamic world with an order and a harmony directly related to the world of mathematics understood in its traditional sense. Likewise, it is because of this element within the total spectrum of Islamic spirituality that Muslims became attracted to the various branches of mathematics early in their history and made so many contributions to the mathematical sciences for nearly a millennium.

The major sources for Islamic mathematics were Greek, as well as Persian and Indian. These sources, especially the Greek, included moreover the rich Babylonian tradition of mathematics, which bestowed upon the world the sexagesimal system. The Persian sources reflected mostly the Indian ones and were embedded in astronomical treatises. Likewise the knowledge which Muslims received from India in the domain of mathematics was contained for the most part within the astronomical compendia known as the siddhāntas and referred to in Muslim sources as sindhinds. Of these, perhaps the most important for both Islamic mathematics and astronomy are the Brāhmaṇasphutasaiddhānta of Brahmagupta and the Āryabhaṭīya of Āryabhaṭa which systematizes the earlier siddhāntas.

As for the Greek sources, they include most of the major works of Greek mathematics such as the Elements and Data of Euclid; the Conics, The Section of the Ratio, and the Determinate Section of Apollonios Pergaeus; the Spherics of Theodosius of Tripoli; the all-important Introduction to Arithmetic of Nichomachus of Gerasa and the Spherics of Menelaus, along with the works of Heron, Theon and other important Alexandrian mathematicians and commentators. Also of special significance for Islamic mathematics is Archimedes, almost all of whose writings, such as The Sphere and the Cylinder, The Measurement of the Circle, The Equilibrium of Planes and Floating Bodies, were translated into Arabic. In fact there are many works in Arabic either by Archimedes or attributed to him for which there is no original Greek. Altogether, it may be said with safety that the Muslims inherited nearly all the important mathematical ideas developed in ancient Mesopotamia, Egypt, Greece and the Hellenistic world as well as in Persia and India and made of this vast heritage the basis for the development of Islamic mathematics.

Numerals

Whenever Westerners think of Islamic civilization, one of the first elements which comes to mind is the Arabic numerals, which reached the West in the 4th/10th century from the Islamic world and brought about such a profound transformation in the West that some historians have compared their far-reaching significance to that of the new methods of harnessing the power and speed of the horse and the settling of the northern regions of Europe. It is, therefore, essential to

2. There is of course a principal difference between traditional mathematics, which is concerned with the symbolic and qualitative aspects of numbers and figures as well as their quantitative aspect, and modern mathematics, which is limited to the latter aspect. On traditional mathematics see S. H. Nasr, An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, pp. 45ff.; Fabre d'Olivet, The Golden Verses of Pythagoras, New York, 1917; and the numerous works of H. Kayser, such as Bevor die Engel sangen, Basel, 1953; Der horenende Mensch, Berlin, 1932; and Akroasis, die Lehre von der Harmonik der Welt, Stuttgart, 1947, which applies Pythagorean mathematics and music to various sciences of nature. For a summary of the views of H. Kayser see S. Levarie and E. Levy, 'The Pythagorean Table', Main Currents in Modern Thought, March–April, 1974, pp. 117–129.

3. This work, translated by Thābit ibn Qurrah into Arabic, had a particularly deep influence on the formulation of the philosophy of mathematics among Muslims, especially upon the first epistle of the Brethren of Purity. See R. Goldstein's translation of this epistle in 'A Treatise on Number Theory from a Tenth Century Arabic Source', Centaurus, vol. 10, 1964, pp. 129–134.

unravel the complicated history of these numerals before delving into various branches of mathematics.

Anyone who travels through the Islamic world today realizes that in the eastern lands of Islam extending as far West as Egypt, the numerals used are, with slight variations, as follows⁵:

\[ \begin{array}{cccccc}
7 & 8 & 9 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\
\end{array} \]

In North Africa, however, the numerals are the same as those which Westerners call Arabic numerals, whose forms reveal their historical relation with the numerals now in use in the eastern Islamic countries.

The Muslims originally used finger computation (hisāb al-yad)⁶ before learning of the Indian numerals and the ‘dust-board’ system (hisāb al-ghubārī) early in the 2nd/8th century from Indian and Persian sources.⁷ But even after learning of these new methods of reckoning the method of finger computation continued. Moreover, the Muslims inherited the sexigesimal system from ancient Babylonia, which continued to be used, especially by astronomers, even after the decimal system had been adopted. The hisāb al-jummal, using letters to symbolize numbers and based on the sexigesimal system, spread widely throughout the Islamic world over the centuries. The sexigesimal system in fact came to be known as the ‘arithmetic of astronomers’ (hisāb al-munajjimin), and as late as the 9th/15th century Sibt al-Māridīnī wrote an entire work in this system entitled Raqā‘iṣ al-ḥaqā‘iq fī ma‘rifat al-daraj wa‘l-daqā‘iq (Delicacies of Truth Concerning Knowledge of Degrees and Minutes). As far as the decimal system is concerned, the Muslims in fact fused various methods of reckoning into a system which was based on the Indian numerals and the place-system.

---

5. These numbers are of Indian origin and therefore called Indian numbers (al-argām al-hindiyyah) in Arabic. See the classical study of D. E. Smith and L. C. Karpinski, The Hindu-Arabic Numerals, Boston, 1911.


7. On the dust-board system, which is thus called because it made use of a board on which dust was spread so that numbers could be traced upon it, see M. Souissi, ‘hisāb al-ghubārī’ in the Encyclopaedia of Islam (new edition).

8. Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī in fact wrote a treatise entitled Jawām‘ al-ḥisāb bi‘l-taḥk wa‘l-turāb (Summaries of Arithmetic through Board and Dust). The dust-board method still survives as a ‘folk’ practice in certain regions along with other popular methods of calculation such as the siyāq system which is still fairly prevalent in the bazaars of Persia.

---

lost but which survives in translation. The Toledan translation of this work known as *Algorismi de numero indorum* had a profound effect upon the West and bestowed upon Western languages such terms as algorithm (from the name of al-Khwārizmi himself) and *guarismo* in Spanish, as well as the word cipher (from the Arabic *ṣifr* or zero).

In the 4th/10th century Abu’l-Ḥasan al-Uqīlidūsī wrote his *Kitāb al-fuṣūl fi’l-ḥisāb al-hindi* (*The Book of Chapters Concerning Indian Arithmetic*), in which he applied Indian schemes of calculation to methods of finger reckoning and tried to change dust-board methods so as to make them applicable to ink and paper. Contemporary with him Abu’l-Wafāʾ freed the Indian numerals from the dust-board techniques, while in the following century Abu’l-Ḥasan al-Nasawī wrote another important treatise on Indian numerals entitled *Kitāb al-muqni’ fi’l-ḥisāb al-hindi* (*The Satisfying Book on Indian Arithmetic*) first in Persian and later in Arabic. By the 5th/11th century, therefore, the decimal system and the two methods of reckoning connected with it had become fully established among Muslims and through them had reached the West, bringing about a transformation which influenced nearly all aspects of life and thought from pure mathematics to commerce and trade.

**Number Theory and Computation**

Interest in the science of numbers and reckoning among Muslims goes back to the earliest Islamic centuries. At the beginning the Muslims distinguished between *ʿilm al-ʿadād* (science of numbers) and *ʿilm al-ḥisāb* (science of reckoning), following the Greeks, but the latter often included for Muslims the science of algebra, which they themselves developed. During the later centuries the two names were used almost interchangeably while the name *arithmāṭīqī* derived from the Greek was also employed by certain authors. In any case most Muslim mathematicians wrote of the science of numbers, but relatively few treatises were devoted solely to this science.

The concern with the science of numbers among Muslims was closely connected with the study of magic squares and amicable numbers, which were also applied to various occult sciences from alchemy to magic. As far as magic squares are concerned, they entered into alchemical speculation in the writings of Jābir ibn Ḥayyān and were studied mathematically by the Ikhwān al-Ṣafāʾ, who knew squares up to 36 components. The celebrated authority on the occult sciences, Shams al-Dīn al-Būnī, carried out further studies on them and found the general formula for larger squares. As for amicable numbers, their general rule was discovered by Thābit ibn Qurrah.

From such preoccupations came the study of numerical series, with which so many mathematicians were concerned. For example, in the 4th/10th century al-Karajī in his *Kitāb al-fakhrī* (*The Book Dedicated to Fakhr al-Dīn*) devoted a notable section to numerical series, while his near contemporary al-Bīrūnī wrote numerous studies on them. The best known study of al-Bīrūnī on the subject is the famous chess-board problem which is as follows: the man who invented the game of chess was commanded by the ruler to whom he presented it to demand a favour. The man asked to be given the amount of grain which would correspond to the number of grains on a chess-board arranged in such a way that there would be one grain in the first square, two in the second, four in the third, and so on up to the 64 squares. The ruler first accepted, but soon realized that there was not that much grain in his whole kingdom. This problem, whose form is

---


13. Two numbers are called amicable if one of them is equal to the sum of the divisors of the other, such as the numbers 220 and 284, which were known to the Ikhwān al-Ṣafāʾ.
typical of mathematical problems found in Muslim texts, was solved by al-Biruni. In modern connotation it would be $\sum_{i=1}^{64} 2^{i-1} - I = 2^{64} - I$. Al-Biruni found the answer to be 18, 446, 744, 073, 709, 551, 615.\footnote{This problem is cited as an example by al-Biruni in his Chronology of Ancient Nations. See E. Sachau, ‘Algebraisches über das Schach bei Biruni’, Zeitschrift der deutschen morgenländischen Gesellschaft, vol. 29, 1876, p. 148; see also A. Qorbani, Biruni-namah, Tehran, 1353 (A.H. solar), pp. 234ff.}

The study of numbers and numerical series as well as computation reached its peak with Ghiyath al-Din Jamshid al-Kashani, the outstanding Persian mathematician, whose amazing contributions to the science of numbers are only now becoming known after centuries of neglect.\footnote{Al-Uqlidisi seems to have invented them, but they were forgotten for centuries until re-discovered and introduced into the mainstream of mathematics by Kashani.}

Kashani not only invented the decimal fraction,\footnote{See E. S. Kennedy, ‘A fifteenth-century planetary computer: al-Kashi’s Tabaq al-manateq’, Isis, vol. 41, 1950, pp. 180–183; vol. 43, 1952, pp. 42–50. A word must also be said concerning the abacus. This instrument, which is in wide use in the Islamic world and which differs from the one used in the Far East and elsewhere, is probably also a Persian or Arabic invention, whose origin in time, however, is not known. It may be very ancient; in fact some have suggested that the Babylonians may have had a some form of abacus.} the approximate method for calculating problems which have no exact solution, and the iterative algorism, and made a remarkably accurate calculation of $\pi$; but he must also be considered the first person to have invented a calculating machine.\footnote{He was also the first to have solved the binomial known by the name of Newton. The solution of the binomial $(a + b)^n = a^n + (\binom{n}{1})a^{n-1}b + \ldots + (\binom{n}{n})a^0b^n$ is found in his Miftah al-hisab (Key to Arithmetic), which is perhaps the most important}
Muslim work on the science of numbers. Kāshānī is also the author of al-Risālat al-muḥtiyyah (The All-Embracing Treatise on the Circumference) which is a masterpiece in arithmetic based on the sexagesimal system.

Interest in the science of numbers was not limited to Persia, although most of the activity there was concentrated into the Safavid period, with the appearance of the works of such figures as Shaykh Bahā’ al-Din ‘Āmili and Mullā Muḥammad Bāqir Yazdi. ‘Āmili was particularly influential because he was a truly universal genius, at once mathematician, architect, theologian, poet, Sufi and alchemist, and his works were widely read. It is not accidental that Suter concluded his now classical work on Islamic mathematicians with him and noted the importance of his Khulāṣat al-hisāb (The Summary of Arithmetic) for number theory.

Elsewhere in the Islamic world a series of important figures appeared almost contemporary with Tūsī and Kāshānī. Foremost among them was Abu’l-‘Abbās ibn Bānna’ al-Marrākushi who lived in the 7th/13th century and produced some seventy books on all branches of mathematics, foremost among them the Taḥkhis a’māl al-hisāb (Summary of Arithmetic Operations), which is among the best Muslim works on the subject. Also from the Maghrib one may mention Ibn Ḥamzah al-Maghribi, who lived in the 10th/16th century and wrote the Tuḥfat al-‘ilmād (Gift of Confidence) in Turkish on number theory. He laid the foundation for the invention of the logarithm through the study of numerical series, as had Mullā Bāqir Yazdi, his contemporary in Persia.

As for the middle part of the Islamic world, there, too, several notable figures devoted studies to the science of numbers. Abu’l-‘Abbās ibn al-Hā’im al-Miṣri, who lived in the 8th/14th century, wrote on both arithmetic and algebra. A century later Badr al-Din al-Māridini composed his Tuḥfat al-bāb fi ‘ilm al-hisāb (Gift of the Gate concerning the Science of Arithmetic), which contains a discussion of number theory and fractions.

When we glance over Muslim works in number theory and computation we observe several important achievements. One is the development of the philosophy of numbers and of mathematics in general, which unveils a concept of mathematics very different from that prevalent today. Secondly there is the new definition given by Muslims to number itself, expanding the definition provided by Euclides through recourse to continuous fractions by means of which a ratio is expressed. For example,

\[ \sqrt{2} = \frac{1}{1 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{2 + \frac{1}{\ldots}}}} \]

In such a procedure, if the fraction is terminated, the ratio is rational, and if not, it is irrational. Khayyām, who discussed this matter, almost made of the irrational itself a number, saying that the irrational can be 'interpreted' as a number. Also Tūsī asserted that every ratio can be regarded as a number.

Finally the Muslims developed techniques of computation far beyond what had existed before. This is to be seen especially in the circle of Naṣir al-Din al-Tūsī at Maragha, where a precision of one in ten million was attained for the table of tangents. To have a large number of mathematicians work on problems together, to coordinate their computation and finally to develop a means of checking error as one progresses is no easy task. But this is precisely what was achieved in Persia in the 7th/13th century, although the means whereby it was done are not as yet fully known. Be it as it may, it represents a major achievement of Islamic mathematics.

17. For an analysis of this important work see P. Luckey, ‘Die Rechenkunst bei Gamšid b. Mas'ūd al-Kāṣī, mit Rückblicken auf die ältere Geschichte des Rechnens’, Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes, XXXI, I, 1951; the extensive commentary on this work along with its translation into Russian by Segal and Yuschkewitsch, Moscow, 1956; and A. Qorbānī, Kāshānī-nāmah, Tehran, 1350 (A.H. solar), part three.

18. This work was translated and commented upon extensively by P. Luckey in his ‘Der Lehrbrief über den Kreismfang’, Abhandlungen der deutschen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin, no. 6, 1953.


Geometry

The study of geometry among Muslims begins with the classical Greek sources, especially Euclid and Apollonios, with which Muslim mathematicians became acquainted early in the Abbasid period. Interest in geometry in Baghdad was incited most of all, however, through the works of the sons of Mūsā, or Banū Mūsā, especially their Kitāb ma‘rifah misāḥat al-ashkāl (The Book of Knowledge of the Area of Figures), upon which Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī was later to write a commentary. This work was also translated into Latin and influenced Fibonacci and Thomas Bradwardine. The Banū Mūsā also wrote an important recension of the Conics of Apollonios. Also in the 3rd/9th century Thābit ibn Qurrah wrote on cubatures and quadratures and used the method of exhaustions in a manner which anticipates the development of integral calculus. Thābit also advanced the study of parabolas and in his Quadrature of the Parabola used integral sums to find the area of a segment of a parabola.

During the 4th/10th century Abu'l-'Abbās al-Nayrizī, the Latin Anaritius, followed the work of Thābit and also that of Abū 'Abdallāh al-Māhāni, writing an important commentary upon Euclid, which made use of the works of Heron, Simplicius and other Alexandrian mathematicians. Another important work on geometry of this period is the Fi mā yaḥtaj ilayhi al-ṣāni‘ min a‘māl al-hindisah (What the Artisan Needs of Geometric Operations) of Abu'l-Wafā' al-Buzjāni in which the various applications of geometry are thoroughly discussed. Also of importance during this period are the works of Abū Sahīl al-Kūhi, who sought to solve those problems posed by Archimedes and Apollonios which lead to equations higher than the second degree, and Ibn al-Haytham, the great physicist, who worked on isoperimetry.

In the 5th/11th century the great impetus given to geometry during the previous century continued. Abu'l-Jūd, who corresponded with al-Birūnī on mathematical questions, devised a geometric method to divide the circle into nine equal parts. His contemporary Abū Sa‘īd al-Sijzi studied conic sections and trisected an angle by means of the intersection of a circle and a hyperbola.

A new chapter was opened in the study of geometry when Khayyām, and following him Ţūsī, re-examined the fifth postulate of Euclid concerning the parallel line theorem, which concerns the very foundation of Euclidean geometry. Khayyām in his treatise Fi sharḥ mā ashkala min muṣādarat kitāb Uqlidus (Concerning the Difficulties of Euclid’s Elements) considers the quadrilateral ABCD with sides AB and DC equal to each other and both perpendicular to BC, which is the birectangular quadrilateral associated in the history of Western mathematics with Saccheri. In this quadrilateral, angles A and D are equal and nāmah, vol. I, Tehran, 1346 (A.H. solar). Ţūsī preceded Western mathematicians in the discussion of yet another problem. His jāwāmi‘ al-ḥisāb contains the earliest reference to what has come to be known as Pascall’s triangle.

22. See E. S. Kennedy, op. cit.; also B. A. Rosenfeld and A. P. Yuschkevitch, Omar Xaiām, Traktātī, Moscow, 1961, where the text of the treatise appears with translation and commentary in Russian. See also the extensive analysis of this problem in J. Homā‘ī, Khayyāmī-
must be acute, obtuse or right angles. Khayyām proves that only the third can be true, thus asserting the fifth postulate of Euclid. Both Khayyām and Ţūsi realized that if the first possibility were to be true, the sum of the angles of a triangle would be less than $180^\circ$. Neither Khayyām nor Ţūsi followed their research in this domain to its end, and non-Euclidean geometry, including that of Lobachevskii, was left for Western geometers to deal with. But Khayyām realized the special character of the fifth postulate and pointed to the principle which defines this geometry as a coherent and distinct system, corresponding because of its symbolic nature to the profoundest aspects of physical reality.

Altogether, in the domain of geometry, both plane and solid, Muslims followed the path laid out by the Greek mathematicians, solving many of the problems which had been posed but remained unsolved by their predecessors. They also related geometry to algebra and sought geometric solutions for algebraic problems. Finally, they devoted special attention to the symbolic aspects of geometry and its role in art and architecture, keeping always in view the qualitative geometry which reflects the wisdom of the ‘Grand Architect of the Universe’.
Plane and Spherical Trigonometry

Although Greek mathematicians, especially Hipparchus, had calculated a table of chords, trigonometry – both plane and solid and based on the relation of the sides and angles of a right triangle – was invented by Muslims. It was Muslim mathematicians who for the first time formulated the trigonometric functions explicitly. In fact the word ‘sine’ is the direct translation of the Arabic word jayb.\(^{23}\)

Already in the 3rd/9th century trigonometry was used by al-Battānī in his astronomical works. He also helped advance spherical trigonometry. Ḥabash al-Ḥašib, another astronomer of the period, was the first to use tangents (qārīl) and also had knowledge of the sine, cosine and cotangent functions. The most notable advance in trigonometry during the early period was made, however, by Abu’l-Wafā’ al-Buzjānī whose Almagest, not to be confused with that of Ptolemy, was concerned mostly with trigonometry. Abu’l-Wafā’ was the first person to give a demonstration of the sine theorem for a general spherical triangle. He knew the equations:

\[
\sin (a + b) = \sin a \cos b - \cos a \sin b \\
2 \sin^2 \frac{a}{2} - 1 = \cos a \\
\sin a = 2 \sin \frac{a}{2} \cos a
\]

It was also he who first invented the secant (qātir al-qārīl) and not Copernicus as is usually believed. Al-Buzjānī was also the first to discover the relation:

\[
\sin A \sin B \sin C
\]

in a non-perpendicular spherical triangle.

Intense interest in trigonometry existed also among other mathematicians of this period such as Abū Naṣr al-‘Irāq, Abū Maḥmūd al-Khujandī and Ibn Yūnus, each of whom made new contributions to the field, the last having discovered that

\[
\cos a \cos b = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \cos (a + b) - \cos (a - b) \right].
\]

But it was again al-Birūnī who wrote the most masterly work on the subject. Despite its title, his Maqālid ‘ilm al-hay’ah (Keys to the Science of Astronomy), as recently discovered, is the first independent work on spherical trigonometry.\(^{24}\) Al-Birūnī also calculated the approximate value of a diagonal of one degree and in his Mas‘ūdī Canon was the first to give a demonstration that for a plane triangle

\[
\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}
\]

Trigonometry, like most other branches of mathematics, underwent an eclipse in the 5th/11th and 6th/12th centuries and was fully revived by Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī, whose Kitāb shišī al-qītā (Book of the Figure of the Sector) is of fundamental importance to the history of trigonometry. Ṭūsī synthesized the works of the earlier masters such as Abu’l-Wafā’ and al-Birūnī and gave all the six trigonometric functions based on a triangle and independent of the Menelaus Theorem. He also presented those functions independent of astronomy. In fact until the recent discoveries by Qorbānī concerning al-Birūnī’s Maqālid ... the work of Ṭūsī was considered the first independent treatise on trigonometry.

In any case whether it be the works of Ṭūsī or Birūnī, there is no doubt that trigonometry as studied even now was developed completely and established as an independent science by Muslim mathematicians. It is, therefore, strange indeed that in many Muslim countries today even the names of the trigonometric functions, which were originally Arabic, are changed into their French or English equivalents, and this science is presented in the schools of the Islamic world as if it were imported along with gun powder and modern physics from the Occident.

Algebra

As in trigonometry so in algebra Muslims must be considered as the founders of this science whose very name (from the Arabic al-jabr) reflects its origin.\(^{25}\) Muslims made use of Greek (mostly Diaphontos) and Indian sources as well as Babylonian ones, which had reached them through Hebrew works, especially the Mishnat ha-Middot, but it was the early Muslim mathematicians of the 3rd/9th century leading to Muḥammad ibn Mūsā al-Khwārizmī who firmly established this branch of mathematics, which is closely related to certain metaphysical principles so central to Islamic doctrines. The first Muslim

---

23. See Sabra, op. cit.


25. Likewise the unknown in an algebraic equation, which to this day is called x, is derived by means of Spanish from the Arabic word "shay," which is used for the unknown in Arabic treatises on algebra.
work on algebra, the *Kitāb al-mukhtaṣar fi ḥisāb al-jabr wa'l-muqābalah* (The Book of Summary Concerning the Process of Calculating Compulsion and Equation) of al-Khwārizmī in fact has given this science its name, the word *jibr* in the title meaning restoration and amplification of something incomplete and *muqābalah* the balancing of two sides of an equation.\(^{26}\) This work was translated into Latin by Robert of Chester and was responsible for the introduction of algebra into the West.\(^{27}\)

In the 4th/10th century the brilliant start made by al-Khwārizmī was pursued by a number of outstanding mathematicians. Abū Kāmil al-Shujā' resolved equations with up to five unknowns. Abū `Abdallāh al-Māhānī studied a problem posed by Archimedes in his *The Sphere and the Cylinder*: 'To cut a sphere by a plane in such a way that the two parts are in a given proportion to each other'.\(^{28}\) He tried to solve the equation \(x^3 + a = cx^2\) resulting from this problem, an equation which has become synonymous with his name. Abū Ja'far al-Khāzīn solved this equation after al-Māhānī by means of the intersection of conics.

Another important algebraist of the 4th/10th century, al-Khwajandi, wrote a treatise showing that it is impossible to solve the equation \(x^2 + y^2 = z^2\) where \(x, y,\) and \(z\) are whole numbers. This is a special case of Fermat’s proposition. Abu'l-Jūd followed this work and was the first to solve third degree equations through geometric solutions. Al-Karaja, who lived a few years earlier, had in the meantime written one of the foremost Muslim works on algebra, the already mentioned *Kitāb al-fakhri* (The Book Dedicated to Fakhr al-Dīn).\(^{29}\) Woepcke, who first introduced this book to the West, showed that most of Fibonacci’s works were influenced by al-Karaja. In al-Karaja one finds a discussion of indeterminate algebra as well as indeterminate analysis. As an example one can cite the following problem with four unknowns discussed by al-Karaja (using modern notations):

\[
\begin{align*}
x + 1 &= 2(y - 1) \\
y + 2 &= 3(z - 1) \\
z + 3 &= 4(v - 3) \\
v + 4 &= 5(x - 4)
\end{align*}
\]

Several centuries of the development of algebra culminated in the well-known *Algebra* of ‘Umar Khayyām, the most famous Oriental poet in the West thanks to the imaginative translation of his quatrains by Fitzgerald, but rarely seen by the public at large as one of the outstanding mathematicians of history. Khayyām classified algebraic equations up to the third degree in a rigorous and systematic manner and solved them through geometric means.\(^{30}\) In its thoroughness, clarity and manner of exposition as well as its mathematical content the *Algebra* of Khayyām must be counted as one of the masterpieces of Islamic mathematics and is still of value as a model for the way that algebra should be taught to young students.

After Khayyām the study of algebra gradually declined among Muslims and although works continued to be written on the subject they never reached the level of al-Karaja and Khayyām.

---


27. See L. C. Karpinski, *Robert of Chester's Latin Translation of the Algebra of al-Khwārizmī*, New York, 1915. See also F. Rosen, *The Algebra of Muhammad ben Musa*, London, 1831. There were other early Muslim works on algebra such as that of Ibn Turk but none had the influence of al-Khwārizmī’s famous treatise.


29. Selections of this book were translated and thoroughly analyzed by F. Woepcke in his *Extrait du Fakhri*, Paris, 1853. Al-Karaja’s other major mathematical work, the *Kāfī fi'l-hisāb* (The Sufficient Book in Arithmetic) also includes sections devoted to algebra. See A. Hochheim, *Kāfī fi'l-Hisāb (Genügendes über Arithmetik)*, Halle, 1878–1880.

lims used algebraic signs such as $\sqrt{\text{ }}$ for root (jadhr), $\sqrt[2]{\text{ }}$ for unknown (shay'), $\sqrt[3]{\text{ }}$ for square (mâl) etc. In the eastern lands of Islam also a few treatises on algebra of some interest were written, but most of the new developments in the late centuries were in the domain of number theory rather than algebra. In fact with Khayyâm algebra reached a perfection beyond which a step could not be taken until the invention of descriptive geometry and the opening of a new chapter in the science of algebra in the 17th century, a chapter which, however, was based on the forgetting of the very metaphysical principles which have always dominated the horizon of all Islamic mathematics.

**Mathematics and Islamic Art and Architecture**

Anyone who has gained some familiarity with Islamic art and architecture realizes that mathematics plays a special role in these art forms, a role which is more central and extensive than what is found in other living traditions. Not only do the music and poetry of the Islamic peoples follow strict mathematical principles similar to other traditional forms of these arts, but also the plastic arts – from patterns on carpets to the ornaments of mosques – have a relation to the world of geometry and numbers which is more direct than that found in the sacred art of other traditions. In fact some have denied that Islam has developed an art of any importance because it has produced neither painting nor sculpture to compare with what is found in mediaeval Christendom or India. And to most modern Westerners geometric patterns and mathematical rhythms hardly appear as having any relation with sacred art.

![Figure 28](Image)

A flute player. From an Arabic treatise on music.

Figures 29, 30 and 31. Pages from the section on music of the Persian encyclopaedia Durrat al-tā'ī of Qūtb al-Din al-Shirāzī.

31. Numerous treatises in Arabic and Persian deal with the mathematical aspect of poetry and music. Music in particular, in its theoretical aspect, was always considered as a branch of mathematics, much as in the Quadrivium of the mediaeval West. Many leading Muslim philosophers and scientists, such as Ibn Sinâ, Khayyâm and Qūtb al-Din al-Shirāzī, devoted treatises to music, and some like al-Fârâbî were leading theoreticians of music. Unfortunately limitations of space do not allow us to devote a separate chapter to this subject.

and figures. The modern world knows only the second and third levels, whereas Islam has remained always aware of all three. The use of mathematics in Islamic art and architecture is not only the result of an ‘aniconic’ tendency away from the ‘concrete’ toward the ‘abstract’. Rather, it is also a means whereby the archetypes are reflected upon the material plane, making the material transparent and capable of acting as a ladder toward the spiritual realities, which are the most concrete realities of all, realities compared to which physical realities are no more than abstractions. The use of mathematics in Islamic art is a way whereby the material is sacramentalized by virtue of reflecting the archetypal world. It is also the means whereby man becomes aware of the origin as well as the fundamental structure of the physical world that surrounds him and is able to penetrate into the very mystery of God’s creation.33

Mathematics in Islam has not been bound to the world of ‘matter’ as is modern mathematics. It has in fact been related more to the world of life forms and beyond that to the archetypal world. As a result it has been able to reveal the principle of the physical world rather than the structure of its constitutive parts as in modern physics. Moreover, it has been able to aid in the realization of a harmony, balance and awareness of the effusion of multiplicity from Unity and the return of all multiplicity to Unity which characterize Islamic spirituality and are manifested in the most direct manner in Islamic art and architecture. Nowhere is the sacred character of mathematics in the Islamic world view more evident than in art, where with the help of geometry and arithmetic matter is ennobled and a sacred ambience created wherein is directly reflected the ubiquitous Presence of the One in the many.

Figure 32. The division of the chord from a treatise on music.

32. The three kinds of Pythagorean number are treated fully in the existing works of Nichomachus, which include his Manual of Harmony, Introduction to Arithmetic and parts of the Theologumena Arithmetica which have survived in the compilation of Iamblichus of Rome.

The three meanings of numbers have also been dealt with in several contemporary works. In addition to the writings of H. Keyser mentioned above see R. Allendy, Le symbolisme des nombres, Paris, 1948; M. Ghyka, Le nombre d’or, Paris, 1931; and L. Bosman, The Meaning and Philosophy of Numbers, London, 1932.

33. As one of the foremost Western students of Islamic architecture in its relation to mathematics, Keith Critchlow, has shown, certain complicated patterns of Islamic art are identical with the internal structure of various natural substances discovered by modern science. Critchlow has said that it seems that Muslims discovered the inner structure of matter without splitting molecules and atoms. This can in fact be easily explained if one understands the traditional role of number and figure, the hierarchy of universal existence and the principle that the ‘heart’ of physical objects can only be understood in an ultimate sense through a knowledge of their archetypes, rather than by means of indefinite analysis and division, although every analytical study of a legitimate nature reflects again the archetype of the object in question on its own level of reality.
Plate 44. Colour, form and geometry in Islamic art.

Plate 45. The use of geometry to depict the spatial and temporal aspects of cosmic reality.
Figure 33. Ars sine scientia nihil.

BERYL

\[ \text{Be}_3 \text{Al}_2 \text{Si}_6 \text{O}_{18} \]
Chapter VI
Astronomy and Astrology

‘And He it is Who hath set for you the stars (al-nujūm) that ye may guide your course by them amid the darkness of the land and the sea’ (V; 98, Pickthall translation).

‘It is not for the sun to overtake the moon, nor doth the night outstrip the day. They float each in an orbit (falak)’ (XXXVI; 39).

‘Lo! in the creation of the heavens (samāwāt) and the earth, and the difference of night and day... are signs (of Allah’s sovereignty) for people who have sense’ (II; 164).

‘He it is Who created for you all that is in the earth. Then turned He to the heavens and fashioned it as seven heavens (samāwāt) (II; 29).

‘And We have made the sky (al-samā’) a roof withheld (from them). Yet they turn away from its portents’ (XXI; 32).

‘And when the sun is overthrown,
And when the stars (al-nujūm) fall,
And when the hills are moved’ (LXXXI; 1–3).

These verses from the Holy Quran are only a few among numerous references made in the Holy Book of Islam to the heavens and celestial phenomena in general. As the last religion in the present cycle of humanity, Islam is also in a fundamental sense a return to the primordial tradition (al-dīn al-hanīf). This basic truth is naturally reflected in the Holy Quran, many of whose verses point to a return to the primordial revelation which is none other than the ‘book of creation’ or virgin nature itself. The ‘signs’ (āyāt) of this ‘Book’ become transparent once again in the pages of the Holy Quran. Hence, there is continuous reference to the world of creation to complement the verses, which specifically concern man on the one hand and the purely principial domain on the other. And Muslims speak of the created world as the ‘Quran of creation’ (al-Qur’ān al-takwini) and of the written Quran as the ‘recorded Quran’ (al-Qur’ān al-tadwini).1 None of the sacred texts of the various traditions speaks as often of the ‘signs’ of God manifested in the natural order as does the Holy Quran, with the possible exception of the Vedas, which are also a direct reflection of the primordial revelation. Moreover, the Quranic references pertaining to nature are concerned

1. ‘One of the characteristics of the Quran as the last Revelation is that at times it becomes as it were transparent in order that the first Revelation may shine through its verses; and this first Revelation, namely the Book of Nature, belongs to everyone’. M. Lings, What is Sufism?, London, 1975, p. 23. On the relation of the ‘two Qurans’ mentioned above see S. H. Nasr, The Encounter of Man and Nature, p. 95.
mostly with the heavens. This confirmation on the part of the most sacred source of Islam combined with the natural inclination towards the study of the heavens of Arabian nomads, who roamed over vast deserts with the help of the stars, gave a powerful impetus to astronomy from the beginning of Islamic civilization and created for this science and its ancillary disciplines a special position among all 'intellectual sciences', so that even jurisprudents and theologians opposed to some of these sciences respected astronomy while some went so far as to hold it in high esteem.

Of course the cosmic dimension of the Islamic rites, especially the daily prayers, also brought into focus the practical importance of astronomy for the religious community. The times of the daily prayers have to be determined throughout the year for every geographical latitude and longitude where there are faithful, practising Muslims, and the direction for the prayers facing Mecca has to be determined again for every locality where the prayers are performed.

Figure 34a. One of the methods of finding the direction of the qiblah, by al-Biruni.

'We transform the direct sine and the versed sine of the longitudinal difference in order to obtain from the ordinary sine the sine of the modified longitude. Further, we multiply the transformed versed sine by the sine of the latitude of our town, and we divide this product by the total sine; then we add the quotient obtained thereby to the versed sine of the sum of Mecca's latitude and the colatitude of our town. We obtain thereby the gauge. If this is less than the total sine, the azimuth of the qiblah is south of the east-west line; if the gauge is equal to it, the azimuth coincides with that line, and if the gauge is more than the total sine, then the azimuth is north of the east-west line.

'Further, we square the difference between the gauge and the total sine, and we square the sine of the modified longitude; then we divide the product of the sine of the modified longitude times the total sine by the (square) root of the sum of the two squares. The quotient obtained thereby is the sine of the azimuth displacement from the meridian line.

'Proof of this method: Again, we let the semicircle ABG represent the western horizon of Ghazna, and let us imagine that AKG represents a semi-circle of its meridian. We mark off arc AK equal to the colatitude of Ghazna [taken as example by al-Biruni] and arc KH equal to the latitude of Mecca. We join KE and draw HT parallel to it; then we draw HY perpendicular to KE. It is obvious that KE is the line of intersection between the plane of the meridian of Ghazna and the plane of the parallel of Mecca, and that HY is the sine of the latitude of Mecca, and EY is the cosine of its latitude. Further, we mark off arc FK equal to the longitudinal difference, and we join FE. With E as centre and with radius EY we draw the arc YN; then we drop NO perpendicular to KE, and we produce NO to meet the line TH at M. It is known that arc YN lies on a circle which is equal to the parallel of Mecca, because it was drawn with a radius equal to the cosine of its latitude, and since YN is similar to arc FK, arc YN is a measure of the longitudinal difference in the parallel (of Mecca).

'So NO is the sine of the modified longitudinal difference, measured in that circle, and YO is the versed sine of the longitudinal difference, which is also measured in that circle. Hence YO is the transformed amount, and HM is equal to it and is really in an analogous position in the meridian circle of Ghazna.

'We drop both HD and ML perpendicular to AEG. Then HD is the sine of the sum of AK, the colatitude of Ghazna, and KH, the latitude of Mecca. Therefore AD is the versed sine of this sum. Further, we draw MC parallel to AG; then the triangle HMC is similar to the triangle HDT, the triangle of daylight. So the ratio of HM to the transformed versed sine, to MC is as the ratio of the sine of angle HCM, the right angle, to the sine of angle HMC, the colatitude of Ghazna. Hence MC is known. Now, DL is equal to MC, and AL, the gauge, is the sum of AD and DL. (It is called the gauge) because point L is on the line through the foot of the vertical from Mecca parallel to the east-west line. Whenever it falls between the two points A and E, the line that issues from E to the point which is supposed to fall on it, ends up on the southern quadrant AB, but if it falls beyond E, towards G, then that line ends up on the northern quadrant BG.

'Moreover, it is known that the segment between L and the foot of the vertical from Mecca is equal to the sine of the modified longitude, I mean NO. So if we separate LZ, which lies on the prolongation of ML - though it really makes with AG a right angle, but if the semicircle AKG is revolved about the axis AEG until it coincides with the eastern half of the horizon, then ML would coincide with the said line and LZ would fall on the prolongation of ML - and if we join EZ and produce it to S, then ES will be the line of the qiblah. Now ZE is the hypotenuse of a right triangle with legs ZL and LE; therefore ZE is known. But the ratio of ZE to ZL is as the ratio of the sine of angle ZLE, the right angle, to the sine of angle LEZ whose magnitude is that of arc AS, the displacement of the azimuth line from the meridian line. Therefore the azimuth is known from this proportion, and that is what we wanted to prove.

'Otherwise, if we like, we divide the product of the sine of the modified longitude times the total sine by the difference between the gauge and the total sine. The quotient obtained thereby is a measure of the tangent of the displacement of the azimuth from the meridian line.

'For example, in the last computations for the city of Ghazna, the product of the sine of the modified longitude times the total sine was 1358;170. We divided this product by the difference between the gauge and the total sine, which is 8,5 [6,6], and obtained the quotient 172;59,50, which is the tangent of the displacement of the direction of the qiblah at Ghazna from the south. The arc (tangent) of this displacement is 70;47,9.

'Proof: We draw AW, a tangent line to the circle at A, and we produce ES until it meets the tangent line at W. Then AW is the tangent of arc AS. Further, the ratio of EL, the difference between the gauge and the total sine, to LZ, the sine of the modified longitude, is as the ratio of EA, the total sine, to AW, the tangent. Hence it (the tangent) is known.

'If we wish to find the cotangent function, we multiply the difference between the gauge and the total sine, and we divide the result by the sine of the modified longitude, and what results is the cotangent for the distance of the azimuth from the south point.

'The practical method for the termination of the azimuth of the qiblah is evidently as follows: if AHG is the meridian line in a circle whose plane is parallel to the horizon, and if we take arc AK equal to the colatitude of our town, arc KH equal to the latitude of Mecca, arc KEF equal to the longitudinal difference between them, and if we join the segments FE and KE, and if we construct HT parallel to KE, and HY perpendicular to KE, and if, with centre E and at a distance EY, we draw the arc YN, and if we construct NO perpendicular to KE and extend NO to meet TH at M, and further, if we construct MLZ perpendicular to AG, and we make LZ equal to NO, and if we produce EZ to meet the circumference of the circle at S, then ES will be the line of prayer.'
That is why, from unknown astronomers to figures such as al-Biruni and Ibn al-Haytham (the Latin Alhazen), Muslims devised means for finding the direction of Mecca (the qiblah) and up to recent times (as seen in the treatise of the almost contemporary Persian traditional mathematician Sardar Kabuli) new methods were sought to facilitate the calculation of the direction of the qiblah. Practical religious need therefore supplemented profound metaphysical reasons connected with the nature of the Quranic revelation to make astronomy a main concern of Muslim scientists and to enable them to produce a vast corpus which has hardly been studied even now after decades of research by scholars of the East and the West.

Figure 34(b). On finding the direction of the qiblah according to Sardar Kabuli.

"Concerning finding the direction of the qiblah with the aid of the “Indian circle” (dira ara-yi hindi).
"Concerning this problem our words are the same as those of Shaykh-i Bahá’í [Bahá’í al-Din ‘Amíl] — may God sanctify his inner mystery — at the end of the first chapter of the sixth part of his book Habí al-matin. He first describes how to draw the “Indian circle”, to divide it into four parts and each part into 90 degrees. Then he adds that if the longitude of the city in question is more than the longitude of Mecca, mark the difference between the two longitudes from the point of south or north; and if the longitude of the city in question is less than that of Mecca do the same in the direction of the east. From the point found in this way on the circle draw a line parallel to the north-south line. Do the same for the latitude of the city in question and that of Mecca from the point east or west. If the latitude of the city in question is less than the latitude of Mecca mark the difference between the two latitudes from east or west toward the north and if it is more toward the south. From the point thus found on the circumference of the circle draw a

line parallel to the east-west line. These two lines, one of which is parallel to the longitudinal line and the other to the east-west line, intersect each other at some point. Connect a line from the centre of the circle to this point of intersection. This line will point in the direction of the qiblah. [Of course from the point of view of astronomers this method gives only an approximate answer! But the jurists (fuqaha) consider its accuracy to be sufficient.] As an example let us try to determine the direction of the qiblah for the city of Kermanshah [a city in Western Persia which was the city from which the author of this treatise hailed].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Longitude of Kermanshah</th>
<th>46° 59'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Longitude of Mecca</td>
<td>39° 30'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difference between the two longitudes</td>
<td>7° 29'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latitude of Kermanshah</td>
<td>34° 19'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latitude of Mecca</td>
<td>21° 25'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difference between the two latitudes</td>
<td>12° 54'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘Now we draw the “Indian circle”; divide it into four quarters and each quarter into ninety equal parts. Then from the point north, i.e., a we mark 7° 29’ towards the west d and from the point south c we also mark 7° 29’ towards the west and then draw the line ez, parallel to the longitudinal line. Then we mark from each of the two points east and west (b and d) 12° 54’ to the south and draw the line li, parallel to the east-west line. These two lines intersect each other at the point m. From the centre of the circle k we connect a line to m and continue it until it intersects the circumference of the circle at D. The line kD is in the direction of the qiblah and the deviation of the direction of the qiblah from the south towards the west is equal to the arc z1D.‘

*The ‘Indian circle’ is one in which a gnomon is placed at the centre and according to the change of the shadow of the gnomon before and after noon the longitude and the east-west line perpendicular to it are found.
Plate 46. An instrument for finding the direction of the qiblah; also used as a sundial.
Astronomy and Astrology

Astronomy in its traditional Islamic setting is referred to either as ‘ilm al-hay’ah, ‘ilm al-nujūm or ‘ilm al-falak and is concerned with observation of the fixed stars and planets, calculation of planetary motion and construction and use of astronomical instruments but, following Aristotle, not such phenomena as comets and shooting stars, which were relegated to the sub-lunar region. Muslims also developed the science of ‘fixed moments’ (for prayers), ‘ilm al-miqāt, as well as finding the direction of the qiblah which as mentioned formed part of astronomy as understood by Muslims.2

It is also important to note that as in Greek where for the most part astronomia and astrologia were used interchangeably and almost synonymously, in Arabic and Persian there was no clear distinction between the two terms, although some philosophers classified astronomy as a branch of mathematics and astrology as part of natural philosophy or occasionally the ‘occult sciences’ (al-ulīm al-khafīyyah or ghāribah). For example, when reference is made in classical texts to the munajjamīn it is difficult to determine whether it means astronomers or astrologers. In most cases it means both. Although there were some authorities who accepted astronomy and condemned astrology, by and large the two intermingled and there was never in Islam the clear distinction that exists in the West today between astronomy considered as a science and astrology as a pseudo-science (with the embarrassing consequence that the supposedly pseudo-science seems to be attracting more Westerners than the science of astronomy itself in this supposedly most rational age of human history).

Sources of Islamic Astronomy

In astronomy as in the other sciences the main sources were Greek, Indian and Persian, except that in this field some Arabic influence of the pre-Islamic period is also to be observed. The pre-Islamic Arabs had had a long tradition of observing the heavens and to this day the nomads of Arabia as well as other parts of the Islamic world know more about the stars and various constellations than most modern educated city dwellers.

The Arabs had divided the trajectory of the moon into twenty-eight stations (manāzīl al-qamar), a system which was later adopted in both Muslim astronomy and astrology. Moreover, they developed a whole ‘science’ related to the mansions of the moon and the first appearance of the light of each mansion and each lunar month, a ‘science’ with the help of which they predicted meteorological phenomena as well as terrestrial events. This ‘science’, which is called ‘ilm al-anwā’ – naw’ being the appearance of the first light of the moon as it enters each mansion – survived into the Islamic period and in fact was elaborated by Muslim scientists such as Ibn Qutaybah al-Dinawari, whose Kitāb al-anwā’ is the best known source on the subject in Arabic.

Islam also adopted the Arabic lunar calendar, which determines the rhythm of religious life for Muslims to this day. Moreover, some form of solar calendar has also been in use throughout Islamic history for agricultural and administrative matters.3 But the Holy Quran forbade the intercalation of the lunar year into the solar one according to the well-known verse:4 ‘Postponement (of a sacred month) (al-nāsī’ – meaning also intercalation) is only an excess of disbelief whereby those who disbelieve are misled...’ (IX; 37).

This injunction is itself an explicit proof of the non-human origin of the Holy Quran, if proof be needed, for it means that the Holy Book forewarned long before the problem arose that the only way to preserve justice among Muslims was to forbid intercalation. The major Muslim Jalālī calendar with names of the months derived from Mazdean angelology. In Afghanistan the Jalālī calendar is also used but the names of the months are those of the twelve Zodiacal signs.


3. To this day the Arab world uses a form of the Julian calendar with ancient Syriac names for the months which have survived into Arabic, while Persia uses the

rites, such as the daily prayers and fasting, are related to the times of sunrise and sunset. Moreover, Islam is a world-wide religion with adherents living in various geographical locations where the length of day and climactic conditions differ greatly. Had the lunar year been fixed within the solar year — as some modernized Muslims unaware of the consequences of their proposals suggest it should be — a grave injustice would be incurred in that some people would have to fast longer days or perform other religious rites under more difficult conditions throughout their lives. Only the forbidding of intercalation could ensure divine justice for all believers. In this verse the Holy Quran took into consideration the future state of the Islamic community far beyond the geographical confines of that small community in Arabia to which the message was originally addressed.

In any case concern with the calendar continued as a major pre-occupation of Muslim astronomers until with the Jalali calendar the Seljuq scientists — including Khayyam — who were responsible for its creation produced the most exact and perfect solar calendar to be used widely to this day. Muslim astronomers also devised more popular calendars used by farmers of which the best known in the West is the calendar of Cordova. These calendars served as models for the Western farmers’ almanac. In fact the word almanac itself, from the Arabic al-munakkh (meaning climate), reveals the influence of Islamic works in this field in the West.5

Returning to the sources of Islamic astronomy, it must be mentioned that Muslims first became acquainted with Indian and Persian sources and only later with Greek ones. Because of their interest in determining the times of day and the direction for prayers Muslims became attracted early to foreign sources of astronomy and in fact the first extant scientific texts in Arabic are concerned with astronomy and astrology. Already in the 2nd/8th century Sassanid works had been translated into Arabic. Sassanid astro-

---

5. Ephemerides of the sun and the moon as functions of annual dates were discovered by Muslims in the 7th 13th century and were the origin of the almanacs used later for navigation across the oceans by Western sailors.
nomy and astrology were themselves deeply influenced by Greek and Indian sources and there is some disagreement among authorities of the subject, such as van der Waerden and Pingree, as to the degree of originality of Sassanic works. This matter is complicated by the fact that Indian astronomy and astrology had themselves been influenced earlier by Greek theories and that there was an extensive exchange of ideas in this field between Greece and India with Persia standing in between. In any case there are certain Sassanian theories such as the use of the flood as the beginning of cosmic cycles, emphasis upon the Jupiter-Saturn conjunction, beginning the day at midnight and of course the Yazdigird calendar, which can be distinguished as distinct Persian elements.

Besides several Pahlavi treatises on astrology, most of which were themselves translated from the Greek and based largely on the popular treatise of Dorotheus of Sidon, the capital work of Sassanian astronomy was the *Royal Astronomical Tables*, *Zīj-i șāh or Zīj-i shahriyār*, assembled in the 6th century (A.D.) during the rule of Anūshirwān but itself based on earlier tables. This *Zīj*, the original of which is lost, is quoted extensively by such later astronomers as Māshā’allaḥ, Abū Ma’shar al-Balkhī and al-Khwārizmī and influenced Islamic astronomy greatly through them. In fact even after it was supplanted by Ptolemy in the eastern lands of Islam it continued to exercise influence in Andalusia for several centuries. Research in the last decade has revealed much more about Sassanian astronomy and its role in Baghdad during the early days of Islamic astronomy and it is now recognized that this influence was greater than earlier scholars had suspected.

As for the Indian sources, such works as the *Khaṇḍakādyaka* of Brahmagupta, the *Āryabhaṭiyā* of Āryabhaṭa and the *Mahāsiddhanta* based mostly on the *Brāhma-sūtrasiddhanta*, most


8. On the old Persian calendars and their historic im-

9. The astrological ideas of Dorotheus had a wide dissemination from India to Europe and appeared in numerous languages. D. Pingree is now preparing a basic work on the original text of Dorotheus and its various recensions.

10. See for example the recent works of Pingree, Kennedy and van der Waerden.
continued on a high level until the time of Tycho
Brahe and Johannes Kepler and on a more sub-
ddued level even during the centuries which
followed.

Islamic Works on Astronomy

The works in Arabic and Persian and even
other Muslim languages, such as Turkish, on
astronomy and allied subjects are of such great
quantity that, despite two centuries of study by
Western scholars, much of the material has re-
mained nearly untouched while a great many
works have been only partially analyzed. This
vast corpus consists of works of several different
types. Some are treatises devoted to a single facet
of the science, such as the fixed stars or a particu-
lar instrument. Some are descriptive accounts of
astronomy without mathematical treatment of the
subject. These range from simple descriptions
given often in general works on philosophy to the
Tadhkirah (Memorial of Astronomy) of Naşîr
al-Din al-Ţūsî, which is one of the major works in
the field of astronomy but without recourse to
mathematics. Yet another genre consists of
calendrical works of one kind or another which
are concerned with chronology, length of days of
the year, etc. Then there are the zijes or tables
which are numerous in the annals of Islam\textsuperscript{11} and
usually include results of observations in tabular
form with extensive mathematical analysis and
even occasionally discussion of mathematics
itself. Some of the greatest Islamic works on
astronomy such as the Hâkimite, Il-Khânid and
Ulugh-Beg tables are in this form. Finally, men-
tion must be made of astronomical compendia
which try to embrace the whole of the field in an
encyclopaedic but at the same time thoroughly
analytical manner. To this class also belong some
of the major works of Islamic astronomy such as
the Qânûn al-masʿūdi (Masʿūdic Canon) of
al-Birûnî and the Nihâyat al-îdrâk (The Limit of
Comprehension) of Quṭb al-Din al-Shirâzî.

To gain full knowledge of Islamic astron-
omy it would be necessary to study all these types
of writing thoroughly. But unfortunately today
even some of the most basic works, such as those
of al-Birûnî and al-Shirâzî, have been only
partially studied, not to speak of many which
remain forgotten in manuscript form in various
libraries. That is why almost every day there are
still important and sometimes major discoveries
made in this field, and what can be given as a
history of Islamic astronomy today is incomplete
to an extent even surpassing most of the other
fields of Islamic science, which also suffer from
the same fate to some degree or other.

The Major Figures of Islamic Astronomy

Upon foundations laid in the 2nd/8th
century major astronomical figures began to
appear in the 3rd/9th century associated mostly
with the city of Baghdad, but also including
Harrānians, some of whom remained Sabaeans
while others converted to Islam only later in life.
The leader of the group of astronomers respon-
sible for observation, measurement and cor-
rection of earlier tables or zijes, which for this
reason were called ‘tested’ (muntahan in Arabic
and probati in Latin), was Ḥabash al-Ḥāsit, whose
figure dominates the early 3rd/9th century
at the court of al-Maʿmûn and who spent forty
years observing various astronomical phenomena
including lunar and solar eclipses. Ḥabash wan-
dered from place to place in order to take maxi-
mum advantage of each site for observation. In
this he was followed by the Banû Mûsâ, who also
began their observations in Baghdad but travelled
extensively. Altogether the astronomers of al-
Maʿmûn made many original observations, one of
the most outstanding being the measurement of
the meridian near Mosul, which they found to be
111,814 metres.\textsuperscript{12} At the same time Abû Maʿshar
al-Balkhi was spreading the study of both
astrology and astronomy relying heavily upon
Sassanid materials and the famous Kitâb al-ulûf

\textsuperscript{11} The word zij entered into Arabic from Pahlavi and into
Pahlavi from Sanskrit. It means originally 'straight
lines' and is connected with the lines created on a field
when the field is ploughed with the help of a cow or a
bull. Most likely it came to be used in conjunction with
astronomical tables because of the lines drawn in such
works to tabulate the results of observation. There are
numerous Muslim zijes, some of great significance and
others of only local interest. They have been surveyed
by E. S. Kennedy in his \textit{A Survey of Islamic Astro-

\textsuperscript{12} The actual value is 110,938 metres. See J. Vernet,
'Mathematics, Astronomy, Optics', \textit{Legacy of Islam},
p. 479.
(The Book of Thousands), which had deep repercussions in certain circles in the Islamic world.\textsuperscript{13}

Muḥammad ibn Mūsā al-Khwārizmi, already mentioned for his contributions to geography and mathematics, was also of importance in astronomy. He left behind two zijes, the greater and the lesser.\textsuperscript{14} The lesser zij was adopted by Maslamah al-Majriti for the meridian of Cordova and translated by Adelard of Bath into Latin and thus exercised much influence in both Muslim and Christian Spain. Other astronomers of the period were also to be influential in the West. Al-Farghani (the Latin Alfraganus) composed the important Kitāb fi'l-ḥarakat al-samāwiyyah wa jawāmiʿ 'ilm al-nuṣūm (Principles of Astronomy), which marked a new phase in the study of Islamic astronomy. Al-Nayrizi, his near contemporary, also known to the West (as Anaritius), composed a commentary upon the Almagest showing special interest in the use of spherical trigonometry in the solution of astronomical problems. The Harrānian Thābit ibn Qurrah, who became a Muslim and who is among the most outstanding scientists of his day, wrote several works on astronomy and was especially concerned with the question of the movement of the solar perigee and the exact measurement of the precession of the equinox. Finally, his contemporary Abū ‘Abdallāh al-Battānī (Albategnius) composed the Zīj al-sābī (The Sabaeana Tables), which marks a peak of both observational and mathematical astronomy in Islam.\textsuperscript{15} Al-Battānī was a careful observer who discovered the amount by which the sun’s apogee had increased since Ptolemy. He determined the inclination of the ecliptic with accuracy at 23° 35’ and made a careful study of lunar and solar eclipses which was used in Europe as late as the 18th century.

In the 4th/10th century extensive activity in astronomy continued with such figures as Abū Sahl al-Kūhī, who was the chief astronomer of the Persian ruler Sharaf al-Dawlah, and ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Ṣūfī, an acute observer who determined the exact length of day in Shiraz and whose Ṣuwar al-kawākib (Figures of the Stars) is considered one of the masterpieces of observational astronomy. It became rapidly the most authoritative source on the subject in the Islamic world and the most often illustrated text of astronomy. Its pages brought together the inspiration of many artists and the science of many astronomers in a perfect blend of art and science so characteristic of Islamic civilization. Through the Libros del saber de astronomía of Alfonso X el Sabio it also exercised much influence upon stellar toponymy in the West.

Another Persian mathematician of note in this period, Abu’l-Wafā’ al-Buzjāni, was also a noteworthy astronomer. His study of the ejection of the moon was studied by L. A. Sédillot in the 19th century and interpreted as the third inequality of the moon, a discovery which has always been attributed to Tycho Brahe. This led to one of the most heated controversies in the annals of modern research on Islamic astronomy, and finally the views of Sédillot were rejected, without this detracting from the importance of Abu’l-Wafā’ for 4th/10th century astronomy.

Other contemporaries of Abu’l-Wafā’ continued to produce major astronomical works. In Persia and the East in general several astronomers were active, such as Abū Maḥmūd al-Khujandi, who made the largest mural sextant known (the Fakhri sextant) to observe the meridian transits of the sun. But the foremost among these figures was again al-Birūnī, whose al-Qānūn al-mas‘ūdi (Mas‘ūdi Canon) is to astronomy what the Canon of Ibn Sinā is to medicine. Unfortunately even today this work of al-Birūnī, which is a compendium of Islamic astronomy up to his day and which contains a wealth of material concerning earlier schools of astronomy as well, has never been fully studied. Al-Birūnī also wrote numerous treatises on special problems of astronomy and chronology and a general introduction to both astronomy and astrology, the Kitāb al-taḥfīm.

\textsuperscript{13} See D. Pingree, The Thousands of Abū Ma’shar, London, 1968, where an ‘astrological history of science’ by Abū Ma’shar is also discussed. It is of interest to note that the West first became acquainted with Aristotelian physics, not though some Peripatetic text, but with the help of the Introduction to Astrology of Abū Ma’shar (Abumasar), which became very popular in the Latin world in the 5th/11th century. See R. Lemay, Abu Ma’shar and Latin Aristotelianism in the Twelfth Century, Beirut, 1962.

\textsuperscript{14} The greater zij is lost and survives only as part of the extant Hebrew and Latin versions of the commentary of Ibn al-Muthannā upon it. See R. Goldstein, Ibn al-Muthannā’s Commentary on the Astronomical Tables of al-Khwārizmi, New Haven and London, 1967.

\textsuperscript{15} No Islamic astronomical work has received as careful an analysis in modern times as this zij, which was thoroughly studied and translated into Latin by C. A. Nallino in his al-Zīj al-Ṣābī, 3 vols., Paris, 1893.
(Elements of Astrology), which is especially important in that al-Bīrūnī wrote it in both Arabic and Persian. This was the first major work on the mathematical sciences in Persian and marks the beginning of a long tradition of works in this language which rely upon the model established by al-Bīrūnī.16

During this period Cairo was also a major centre of astronomical activity. It was in this city that Ibn Yūnus composed his al-Zīj al-ḥākimi (The Hākimite Tables)17 in 397/1007. This work again is a masterpiece of observational astronomy in which many constants have been measured anew and in which extensive use is made of trigonometry for the solution of astronomical problems. Ibn Yūnus was also the first person to make a serious study of the oscillatory motion of a pendulum, which finally led to the invention of the mechanical clock. Ibn Yūnus’s contemporary in Cairo, Ibn al-Haytham (the Latin Alhazen), although known primarily as a physicist and specialist in optics, is also important for the domain of astronomy both because of his study of the nature of the heavens and the measurement of the thickness of the atmosphere and the study of the effect of the atmosphere upon astronomical observations.

Plate 47. The constellations 'The Little Bear', 'The Great Bear' and 'The Dragon'.

Plate 48. The constellation 'Perseus'.

16. This work was translated from a faulty Arabic manuscript by R. Ramsay Wright as al-Bīrūnī, The Book of Instruction in the Elements of the Art of Astrology, London, 1934. There is a masterly edition of the Persian text and a study of its significance in Islamic astronomy by J. Homā‘ī, Kitāb al-taḥṣīl li awl’il ṣinā‘at al-tanjīm, Tehran, 1353 (A.H. solar). As an example of another of al-Bīrūnī’s astronomical-astrological works available in English see Al-Bīrūnī on Transits, trans. by M. Saffouri and A. Ifram with a commentary by E. S. Kennedy, Beirut, 1959; complemented by G. J. Toomer, ‘Notes on al-Bīrūnī on Transits’, Orientalia, vol. 34, fasc. 1, 1965, pp. 45–72. This work is also especially important for the question of the transmission of Indian astronomy to Islam.

The twelve signs of the Zodiac.

Plate 55. Libra.

Plate 54. Virgo.

Plate 53. Leo.

Plate 56. Scorpio.

Plate 57. Sagittarius.

Plate 58. Capricorn.
Plate 61. A figure with many arms representing the power of one of the planets.
In the later part of the 5th/11th and the 6th/12th centuries activity in astronomy, as in most of the other 'intellectual sciences', diminished in the eastern lands of Islam, while the Maghrib, especially Andalusia, became the theatre of new activity in these fields. In the East the only really noteworthy astronomical work of this period was the Zīj-i sanjārī (The Sanjārī Tables), assembled by 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Khāzīnī along with the work done on the Jalālī calendar. But in the Maghrib important astronomers appear, such as al-Zarqālī (Azarquiel in the West), who proved the motion of the apogee of the sun with respect to the fixed stars and who edited the Toledan Tables. Meanwhile there developed among the philosophers of Spain a special dislike for Ptolemaic planetary theory and a defence of the Aristotelian homocentric system. This trend led through Abū Bakr Ibn Ṭūfayl to his student Nūr al-Dīn al-Bītrūjī (Alpetragius), who is responsible for the 'theory of spiral motion' and the most developed criticism against Ptolemaic astronomy to appear in the Western lands of Islam.

A major renaissance of Islamic astronomy took place in Persia in the 7th/13th century with the establishment of the famous observatory of Maragah by Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī and the bringing together of a number of outstanding scientists such as Qutb al-Dīn al-Shirāzī, Muʿayyid al-Dīn al-Urdū, Muhīy al-Dīn al-Maghribī and even a Chinese astronomer named Fāo-Mun-Jī. The school of Maragah marked a new chapter in Islamic astronomy. Besides producing the Zīj-i ilkhānī (The Il-Khānīd Tables), written first in Persian and then translated into Arabic, it made possible numerous works which, as will be mentioned later, deeply affected planetary theory. It also made possible the construction of new instruments and cooperation on a scale never attempted before by a group of astronomers to create an observatory in which both observation and computation were carried out by teams of scientists.

In the 8th/14th and 9th/15th centuries the aura of Maragah still lingered on the horizons. While certain individual scholars such as Ibn al-Shāṭir of Damascus continued to study the implications of the new planetary theories of Tūsī and Shirāzī, in Samarqand a major new observatory was established on the model of Maragah by Ulugh Beg, himself both ruler and astronomer. But the leading light of the group in Samarqand was Ghīyāth al-Dīn Jamshīd al-Kāshānī, the already mentioned mathematician, who had composed the Zīj-i khāqānī. While in Samarqand he cooperated with Ulugh Beg, Qāḍī-zādah Rūmī and several other astronomers to compose the Zīj-i Ulugh Beg, which is again one of the masterpieces of observational astronomy and noted for its new observation of fixed stars.

After Samarqand Islamic astronomy gradually began to recede into the background. Despite a short period of activity by Taqi al-Dīn in the 10th/16th century in Istanbul and individual efforts in Persia as well as the Maghrib, no major new works comparable to those of the early centuries appeared. In fact it seems that the Islamic astronomers, after having studied all the intricacies of the closed Ptolemaic-Aristotelian universe, remained content with seeking the Infinite in the beyond instead of breaking the bounds of the cosmos. It needed a revolt against Heaven to rend asunder the bounds of the mediæval finite Universe. This act, however, did not result in making the Infinite more accessible to man but had the ultimate consequence of profaning an esoteric truth and thereby shattering the 'iconic' aspect of the cosmos, which alone permitted the vast majority of men to gaze upon the sky as the roof of the world and therefore to be aware of the Infinite beyond and above the closed world depicted by traditional astronomy.

---

18. A major study has been devoted to various aspects of al-Zarqālī's astronomical works by J. M. Millas Vallicrosa. See his Estudios sobre Azarchiel, Madrid-Granada, 1943–50.

19. On the process whereby the bounds of the cosmos were broken in the West see A. Koyré, From the Closed World to the Infinite Universe, New York, 1958. Anyone acquainted with the structure of Islamic thought can see why such a process could not have taken place in Islam despite all the available scientific tools and techniques, which were put to quite different use in the West.
The Development of Planetary Theory

Until the 4th/10th century Muslims followed Indian and Persian planetary models, while from the time of al-Battānī the Ptolemaic theory became completely dominant. For the next two to three centuries Islamic astronomers occupied themselves with refining the intricacies of Ptolemaic planetary theory, with which they became ever more dissatisfied as they improved various constants and made more accurate calculations. This finally led to two types of criticism of the Ptolemaic system, which came in the 6th/12th and 7th/13th centuries at the two ends of the Islamic world. As already mentioned, partly as a result of a domination of a purer form of Aristotelianism than was prevalent in the East, a wave of criticism arose in Spain in the 6th/12th century against Ptolemy and in favour of the Aristotelian spheres, which had in fact also been well-known to the eastern Peripatetics such as Ibn Sinā, who describes them fully in his *Shifā’*. But in Spain attempts were made to create astronomically meaningful models based on the Aristotelian system and to do away with the epicycle-deferent system of Ptolemy, which moreover displaced the earth from the centre of the Universe. Al-Bītrūjī marks the peak of this movement which, however, remained more of philosophical than astronomical significance, although this attempt to criticize Ptolemy was of some importance in the later attacks made against him during the Renaissance in the West.

Plate 62. Diagram by al-Bīrūnī showing eclipses of the moon.
Figures 40 and 41. Diagrams by al-Biruni and al-Tusi showing eclipses of the sun and the moon.

Figure 42. Planetary model by al-Biruni.

Plate 63. The deferent and the ecliptic.
In Persia the criticism of Ptolemaic planetary theory was of much greater astronomical importance. In his astronomical masterpiece, the Tadhkirah (Memorial of Astronomy), Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī criticized severely the shortcomings of the Ptolemaic planetary model. His associate Qūṭb al-Dīn al-Shirāzī in his Nihāyat al-īdārāk (The Limit of Comprehension) followed the suggestions of his teacher and applied the Ṭūsī-couple to Mercury, while the Damascene Ibn al-Shāṭir applied the new theory to the motion of the moon and produced a lunar model identical with that of Copernicus. The new planetary model applied mathematically by Qūṭb al-Dīn and Ibn al-Shāṭir was proposed originally by Naṣīr al-Dīn and has for this reason been called by its discoverer E. S. Kennedy the Ṭūsī-couple. It is a model which uses only uniform circular motion and is based, to use modern language, on one vector moving at the end of another. To quote Kennedy’s own words:

‘He [Ṭūsī] seems to have been the first to notice that if one circle rolls around inside the circumference of another, the second circle having twice the radius of the first, then any point on the periphery of the first circle describes a diameter of the second. This rolling device can also be regarded as a linkage of two equal and constant length vectors rotating at constant speed (one twice as fast as the other), and hence has been called a Ṭūsī-couple. Naṣīr al-Dīn, by properly placing such a couple on the end of a vector emanating from the Ptolemaic equant centre, caused the vector periodically to expand and contract. The period of its expansion being equal to that of the epicycle’s rotation about the earth, the end-point of the couple carries the epicycle centre with it and traces out a deferent which fulfils all the conditions imposed upon it by Ptolemy’s observations. At the same time, the whole assemblage is a combination of uniform circular motions, hence unobjectionable, and it preserves the equant property, also demanded by the phenomenon itself.’


Figure 48b

Figure 48c

Figure 48d
Without doubt this new planetary theory as applied by the entourage of Tūsī at Maragha and later Islamic astronomers is the most important transformation brought about in this aspect of astronomy by Muslims. Through channels which are not completely clear—although it is known that Byzantine scholars translated some works of Islamic scientists into Greek during the Il-Khānid period—the fruit of the planetary theory of the school of Maragha reached Copernicus and later European astronomers, who used it in the new heliocentric world-picture which became dominant in the West after the 16th century, while the Muslims, who were completely aware of the possibility of the heliocentric system, remained content with the geocentric one. They realized, as al-Bīrūnī stated explicitly, that the decision in this matter was more a metaphysical and theological question than an astronomical one, and they shunned that step, which could not but contribute to the loss of equilibrium for humanity whose dire consequences parade before the eyes of the modern world today.

Figures 48a, b, c, d and e. The later development of planetary theory by Nasir al-Dīn, Qutb al-Dīn and Ibn al-Shāṭir.

Observatories and Astronomical Instruments

The earliest record of an astronomical observation in the Islamic world dates back to 184/800 when Aḥmad al-Nahāwandi observed the motion of the sun in Jundishapur in Persia. But it took several centuries for the observatory to be brought into being as a distinct scientific institution. The earlier astronomers, such as ‘Abbās ibn Firnās of Cordova, worked in their own houses or on nearby hills or even used minarets as in the case of the Giralda tower in Seville, which is said to have been used for this purpose by Jābir ibn Aflaḥ. Occasionally also observatories were built for individual astronomers, such as that of Ibn Yūnus on the Muqāṭṭam hill on the outskirts of Cairo. Altogether most Muslim cities had an observatory in one form or another which usually fell into disuse and ruin with the death or falling out of favour of the astronomer who built it, or the disappearance from the scene of his patron.

With the establishment of the observatory at Maragha in 657/1259 the history of the observatory entered a new stage. Naṣīr al-Dīn was able to turn the observatory from an individual concern to a scientific institution in which a noteworthy group worked together and which did not depend for its survival upon an individual. Recent excavations by the Azarabadegan University of Tabriz in Maragha have unearthed the foundations of this observatory and made known many aspects of its construction. There is no doubt that the Maragha observatory is the first in the history of science as such institutions are understood today.

Moreover, Maragha had a direct link with the early Western observatories. About a century after Maragha the observatory of Samarqand was established on a grandiose scale based in every way upon Maragha. In fact Ulugh Beg tried consciously to re-create at Samarqand the ambience and the instruments which had enabled the Maragha scientists to achieve what they did. For this reason the Samarqand observatory, of which more survives than that of Maragha, is a key to an understanding of the earlier observatory established by Naṣīr al-Dīn.

A third major observatory of this kind was established in Istanbul in 983/1575 by Taqī al-Dīn. Although it was short-lived and its

Plate 64. The opening page of the Zij of Ulugh Beg.

22. The definitive work on the history of the astronomical observatory in Islam is still A. Sayilli, The Observatory in Islam, Ankara, 1960. As for the general history of astronomy among Muslims, including observatories and astronomical instruments, see E. Wiedemann, 'Zu der Astronomie bei den Arabern', Aufsätze zur arabischen Wissenschaftsgeschichte, vol. 1, pp. 258–271; and

Figure 49. A painting of the reconstruction of the Samarqand Observatory.

Wiedemann, 'Astronomische Instrumente', Aufsätze ... , pp. 544–564.

23. For the details concerning this observatory see Sayilli, op. cit. Of course excavations of the last few years have added a great deal of information to that assembled by Sayilli.
Plate 65. Taqi al-Din and other astronomers working in Istanbul.
destruction was ordered by the caliph angered by certain predictions of the astrologers, it is of great importance in that most likely it is to some extent on the basis of the Istanbul observatory as well as the earlier ones of Samarqand and Maraghah that the first major observatories of the West such as those of Brahe and Kepler were constructed and supplied with similar instruments. The observatory as a scientific institution is one of the important achievements of Islamic science.

In the East, meanwhile, no major observatories were built after Istanbul except in the sub-continent of India, where in the 12th/13th century the Indian Prince Jai Singh constructed major observatories in several cities including Delhi, Jaipur and Ujjain. These observatories, although containing some elements of Hindu astronomy, are essentially continuations of the Islamic observatories and therefore represent the most precious remains of the long tradition of observatory building in the Islamic world. As for the Islamic countries themselves, until a century or two ago in many cities such as Yazd in Persia or Fez in Morocco there were still observational towers and the like, and the present century marks curiously enough the first time in a millennium that most of the Islamic countries are devoid of observatories.24

As far as astronomical instruments are concerned, Muslims had a special love for instrument building, into which they poured their artistic gifts, creating works of art which in the characteristic Islamic manner combined beauty and utility. The love for astronomy and astronomical instruments even caused Muslim architects to decorate buildings with them, the earliest example being the Quṣayr ‘Amrah Umayyad palace of the early 2nd/8th century where the constellations are represented; later fine examples are found from the Safavid, Zand and Qajar periods in such Persian cities as Isfahan and Shiraz. Mosques also throughout the Islamic world have almost always been embellished with sundials of various degrees of perfection, accuracy and beauty.

Figure 51. Remnants of the Samarqand Observatory discovered in recent excavations.

24. It is a sad state of affairs when most Western-educated Muslims who criticize their own culture for not having produced 'science' in the modern Western sense are not even aware of this and many other pertinent facts related to the domain of the traditional sciences.
Plate 66

Figure 52. A sundial from Morocco.

Plates 66 and 67. Two views of the Jai Singh Observatory, Jaipur, India.
Plates 68 and 69. Two views of the Jai Singh Observatory, Delhi, India.
Plate 70. A man determining the time from a sundial in Morocco.
Plate 71. A water clock from Morocco.
The most important Islamic astronomical instrument is of course the astrolabe, which consists of the stereographic projection of the celestial sphere on the plane of the equator taking the pole as the viewpoint. The circle of declination and the azimuthal co-ordinates appear on the plates of the astrolabe, while the asterisms are on the spider or net. This multi-functional instrument can determine the altitude of the stars, the sun, the moon and other planets in much the same way as the sextant or quadrant. The astrolabe can also be used to tell time, and to measure the height of mountains and the depth of wells.\(^{25}\)

Figure 53. A sundial from Old Cairo, Egypt.

Plate 72. A sundial from Persia.

Figures 54, 55 and 56. Description of the astrolabe according to al-Birūnī.

The astrolabe owes its origin to the pre-Islamic period. The Christian philosopher Johannes Philoponus wrote a treatise on it in Greek and the Christian bishop of Kennesrin, Severus Sebokht of Nisibis, also wrote a description of the astrolabe in Syriac. The earliest treatise in Arabic on the astrolabe dates from the 3rd/9th century and is by Māshā'allāh, the Messahalla who influenced Chaucer in his treatise The Conclusions of the Astrolabie. But the original of this treatise is lost and it survives only in its Latin version. The earliest extant manuscript in Arabic on the subject is by 'Ali ibn 'Isā, followed by numerous later works in Arabic, Persian and other languages, some by relatively unknown authors, others by such masters as al-Birūnī and Naṣir al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī. As for the astrolabe itself, the earliest one extant is from 4th 10th century Isfahan, while numerous other examples survive from later centuries from India to Morocco. Some, like that of Shāh Sulṭān Ḥusayn, the last Safavid king, are of unparalleled finess and delicacy. Altogether some of the astrolabes are outstanding examples of Islamic art. Perhaps that is why they caught the eyes of Europeans in the 19th century and today most of the fine ones are housed in European and American museums.
Plate 76

Plate 77

Plate 78

Plate 79. A contemporary master astrolabe maker of Isfahan.
Figures 57 and 58. The universal instrument of Jābir ibn Aflah.

Figures 59 and 60. Front and back of an astrolabe with gears.

Figure 61. Front of a Persian nocturnal, a mechanical instrument to show the direction of the stars.
Since the astrolabe needs as many plates as the number of latitudes employed, it usually becomes heavy and cumbersome to carry about. As a result attempts were made to improve upon it. Thus ‘Ali ibn Khalaf in the 4th/10th century invented the ‘universal plate’ which was the stereographic projection of the sphere on a plane perpendicular to the ecliptic and cutting it according to the solstitial line of Cancer-Capricorn. Al-Zarqāli followed with his famous instrument al-safīḥah, which was an astrolabe in which the two stereographic projections of the circles of the equator and the ecliptic were presented on the same surface. His compatriot Jābir ibn Aflāḥ had also invented a ‘universal instrument’ to be used for astronomy as well as mathematics and physics, an instrument which many consider as the forerunner of the European torquetum. Following them Muẓaffar Sharaf al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī invented the linear astrolabe to simplify the instrument.

Certain Muslim astronomers had also made mechanical astrolabes by which the positions of planets and stars were determined with the help of a gear mechanism. Al-Birūnī had already possessed such an instrument and it was later perfected by the Andalusian astronomer Ibn al-Samḥ with his ‘plates of the seven planets’ and by al-Zarqāli. This instrument spread later into Europe and was the forerunner of the mechanical clock. Altogether the Muslims developed three kinds of astrolabes: the flat ones which are the most common, the linear one called also the ‘staff of Ṭūsī’ after its inventor Muẓaffar Sharaf al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī, and the spherical one of which some descriptions survive but of which there is but a single complete example known to be extant, the famous one at Oxford.

Muslims also used many other astronomical instruments. For example, the azimuthal quadrant (dḥāṭ al-rubʿayn) was known to Ibn Sīnā and perfected by Naṣīr al-Dīn. It was the predecessor of the theodolite used by Tycho Brahe to determine altitudes and azimuths. Muslims also made numerous zodiacal armillaries (dḥāṭ al-ḥilaq) and celestial globes, some of which still survive, and equatoria to predict planetary longitudes. Altogether the art of making astronomical devices reached its peak at Maragha where Muʿayyid al-Dīn al-ʿUrḍī was responsible for the construction of the instruments.

Plate 80. Spherical astrolabe.


27. See for example, C. Pellat, ‘L’astrolabe sphérique d’al-Rūdānī’, Bulletin d’Études Orientales, vol. XXVI, 1973, pp. 7–83, where the Arabic text of al-Nāṣīr ʿalāʾ-ʾalāt al-jāmīʿa ʿalā of the Moroccan scientist and Sufi is given and analyzed. The text describes an instrument which is both a spherical astrolabe and an armillary sphere. The instrument itself has not, however, been as yet discovered.


Plates 81 and 82. Wooden Turkisit quadrants.
Plate 83. An astronomer observing a meteor with a quadrant.

Plate 84. Astronomers working with an armillary sphere.
A point of much interest is the remarkable similarity between the instruments described by al-'Urđi, those described by Taqi al-Din in his work on the Istanbul observatory, and those found in Tycho Brahe’s *Astronomiae instauratae mechanica*. A comparative study reveals the strong influence of Islamic instruments upon those used by Tycho and other European astronomers. For example, the mural quadrant in which Tycho took great pride and which he called Tichonicus was also built by Taqi al-Din and called by him *tibnah*. The same is true of many of the other instruments described by Taqi al-Din and going back ultimately to the Maragha observatory. Altogether a close study of later Islamic astronomical instruments reveals the astonishing degree to which early European observatories followed Islamic models, although inasmuch as they breathed in an already secularized cosmos the European astronomers reached very different conclusions from those of their Muslim predecessors while making use of both their ideas and their instruments.

**Astrology**

Astrology as a systematized art originated in Ptolemaic Egypt while its cosmological symbolism recedes into the dawn of human history and antedates all historical records of various human civilizations. It was in fact the profound symbolism inherent in astrology which made its integration into Islamic civilization and especially into certain aspects of Islamic esotericism possible, despite the obvious external differences between the astrological attempt to predict future events and the Islamic emphasis upon the omnipotent character of the Divine Will. Throughout Islamic history theologians and jurisprudents continued to oppose astrology and with the same persistence astrology continued to be cultivated on the popular level as well as by outstanding astronomers and even masters of gnosis. The loss of the metaphysical foundations upon which all traditional sciences including astrology are based has made of this art today a real superstition according to the very etymology of this term. But in the traditional universe of Islam it was possible for a single person to be a rigorous mathematician of the level of al-Birūnī or Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī and at the same time compose treatises on astrology without the least contradiction or hypocrisy. It would be a grave error to read back into history the fragmented vision of reality in which modern man – including modernized Muslims – takes pride. The world in which the traditional Muslim found himself was vast enough to enable both the mathematical aspects of astronomy and the symbolic aspects of astrology to survive together, often in the mind of a single astronomer or philosopher.

---


31. S. Tekeli, *op. cit.*, p. 329. S. Tekeli is of the view that the *torquetum* so popular in the West did not come from Turkey but from the equatorial armillae (dā’irat al-μτ’addil) so common in the eastern lands of Islam up to the 9th/15th century.


33. Hermeticism and along with it both astrology and alchemy were integrated on the highest level into certain schools of Sufism because of the contemplative quality of the symbolism inherent in the Hermetic cosmological sciences. For a unique analysis of the integration of astrology into Sufism see T. Burckhardt, *Clé spirituelle de l’astrologie musulmane*, Paris, 1950. On the question of the attitude of various Muslim savants to astrology as well as a thorough discussion of the sources and history of Islamic astrology see M. Ullmann, *Natur- und Geheimwissenschaft im Islam*, chapter 5. See also C. A. Nallino, *Raccolti di scritti editi e inediti*, vol. 5, Rome, 1944.

34. Few facts can be more embarrassing for modernized men, who take pride in the gradual ‘evolution’ of humanity away from superstition toward rationalistic ‘enlightenment’, than to witness that the number of works published today in many of the cities of the most industrialized countries of the West, which are citadels of rationalism, on the ‘occult sciences’, including astrology, is greater than those written on the official sciences.
The sources of Islamic astrology are the well-known Greek works such as those of Dorotheus of Sidon, Ptolemy, Antiochus, Vettius Valens and Teukros along with Sassanid writings which were often Pahlavi translations of the same Greek texts, and Indian astrological writings. The Muslim astrologers had greater information at their disposal and were more exact in assembling their material than their predecessors. But the branches of astrology among Muslims are the same as among the Greeks or ancient Persians. They include judicial astrology, dealing with the prediction of the future of events or institutions, genethliac astrology, dealing with the horoscopes of individuals, and the cosmological aspect of astrology. Many Muslim thinkers were attracted only to the cosmological symbolism of astrology, while the astronomers who were also devoted to astrology often shied away from casting horoscopes and foretelling the futures of individuals. Of course horoscopes were made, especially for important historical personages such as kings and viziers; even astrological histories of mankind were attempted, the best known being those of Māshā'allāh and Abū Ma'shar al-Balkhi, who was the most famous of mediaeval astrologers in both the Islamic world and the West. Muslim astronomers also took special advantage of the interest of rulers in astrology to advance the cause of astronomy, as seen so clearly in the roles of al-Bīrūnī and Naṣīr al-Dīn vis-à-vis Maḥmūd of Ghazna and Hulāgū, respectively.

At one extreme, astrological symbolism based on the wedding between heaven and earth and a study of the angelic aspect of cosmic reality in determining the course of events in the terrestrial domain became an organic aspect of Islamic metaphysics and cosmology. This aspect of astrology appears in works of authors as diverse as Ibn Sinā, Suhrawardi and even the Ash'arite theologian Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī. At the other extreme, popular astrology combined with other 'predictive' arts to provide a means for certain people to alleviate their anxieties about the future.


Plate 86. Page from an astrological treatise describing the influences of the various houses.
Plate 87. Page from an astrological treatise describing the influence of the various houses.
Despite the opposition of religious authorities to the predictive aspect of astrology, its practice has continued far and wide in Islamic civilization over the centuries. Many notable astronomical treatises have astrological sections attached to them and numerous pages of Arabic, Persian, Turkish and other literatures of the Islamic peoples are concerned with the interrelation between man’s terrestrial life and celestial influences. But on the highest level, namely in metaphysical and gnostic works, the powerful symbolism of astrology has been integrated perfectly into Islamic esotericism. In these works astrology is revealed to be in its symbolic aspect a means whereby man rediscovers his own cosmic dimension and becomes aware of his own angelic and archetypal reality and the influence of this reality upon his terrestrial existence. This was achieved without in any way destroying or weakening the direct relation which man possesses vis-à-vis the metacosmic Reality, which lies at once beyond the Universe and at the centre of his own being.

The Achievements of Islamic Astronomy

It is not easy to evaluate more than a thousand years of activity in the field of astronomy ranging from Spain to India, especially when numerous works remain neglected in various libraries, and writings of even such major figures as Quṭb al-Dīn al-Shirāzī have not as yet been printed. Nevertheless, as already mentioned, as a result of nearly two centuries of research on Islamic astronomy by Western and Muslim scholars, there have appeared numerous books and articles which reveal at least the main contours of Islamic astronomy although without doubt libraries in various countries still hold many surprises for future scholars.

The first notable feature of Islamic astronomy is of course the vast amount of actual observation that was made of the heavens, far more than was undertaken by the Greeks. The observations of Muslim astronomers dealt with all aspects of astronomical phenomena. Old constants were improved, new star catalogues composed and many new stars discovered; the inclination of the ecliptic was remeasured, the
motion of the solar apogee was observed and tied to the movement of the fixed stars (i.e., the gradual precession of the equinox), and other important discoveries concerning the movement of various planets were made.

Another important feature of Islamic astronomy was the new methods of applying mathematics to astronomy. As already mentioned Muslim scientists used the calculus of sines and trigonometry instead of the calculus of chords and were therefore able to achieve much greater precision in their measurements. They also perfected computation techniques dealing with the motion of the planets far beyond anything achieved before.

Islamic astronomy attempted essentially to refine and at the same time criticize Ptolemaic astronomy. It added a ninth heaven to account for diurnal motion and deleted the sphere which Ptolemy had placed at each heaven to communicate diurnal motion. But this criticism went far beyond astronomical intricacies. It involved, as already seen, one type of criticism emanating from the point of view of Aristotelian cosmology and another which was also essentially of a philosophical nature associated with Tūsī and his collaborators, who saw as the greatest fault of the Ptolemaic system that the earth was not actually at the centre of the Universe. As a matter of fact the first type of criticism did not produce a

**Figure 64.** The nine heavens of Islamic astronomy.

**Plate 88.** The nine heavens of Islamic astronomy.
new mathematical model while the second did; but from the point of view of the history of astronomy, and especially 16th century debates about geocentric astronomy in the West, both are of great importance. The major lesson to learn from this aspect of Islamic astronomy is that Muslims had all the technical knowledge necessary to overthrow the Ptolemaic system, including knowledge of the heliocentric system, but they did not do so because they had not as yet become forgetful of the symbolic content of traditional astronomy nor of the fact that the best way to remind most men of the presence of God is to remind them of the limited character of the created world.

The concern of Muslim astronomers with measuring the size of the Universe was related to this deep insight. Using the principle that there is no 'waste' in the cosmos and that therefore the outer limit of each sphere had to be tangent to the inner limit of the next, and also benefiting from the measurements of Greek astronomers like Hipparchus, Eratosthenes and Ptolemy, they gave tables for distances of planets and the fixed stars. Those of al-Farghani and al-Biruni were especially famous and those of al-Farghani in addition influenced Western thinkers for several centuries.

But perhaps the most enduring contribution of Muslims to the history of astronomy was their transforming the Ptolemaic spheres from merely mathematical models to 'physical' realities. It is known that the Greek mathematicians and astronomers spoke of 'saving the phenomena' and saw the role of science as devising models which help to 'save the phenomena' studied. Aristotle was of course opposed to this view but then he did not devise any mathematical models. Already during the Islamic period Thabit ibn Qurrah believed in the 'solidity' of the heavens, while in his very important *Resume of Astronomy*, which survives today only in Latin and Hebrew translations, Ibn al-Haytham gave actual 'physical' models for the heavens. He was followed in this by Tusi and other eminent astronomers in the East as well as by Western scientists to the extent that in the late Middle Ages and the Renaissance everyone quite naturally thought that the goal of science was to discover some aspect of reality. Even when Galileo and Newton were overthrowing Ptolemaic astronomy and Aristotelian physics they did not think for one moment that they were merely 'saving phenomena'. They believed firmly that they were discovering aspects of physical reality. Their science still had an ontological aspect. It is necessary to study the debates of modern philosophers of science such as Emile Meyerson and Henri Poincaré on the very nature of science to realize how profound was the actual transformation brought about by Muslim astronomers, and especially Ibn al-Haytham, a transformation which changed the role of the mathematically orientated sciences from 'saving the phenomena' to discovering an aspect of reality.

As far as Islamic civilization itself is concerned the achievement of Islamic astronomy was to provide at one extreme for the practical needs of the community by devising calendars, almanacs, treatises to find the direction of the qiblah and the like, and at the other extreme a mathematical astronomy of remarkable accuracy. It provided a science which influenced the West


39. In his *Hypotheses of the Planets*, Ptolemy speaks of the 'reality' of the heavens, but this is an exception. The main thrust of his other and better known writings as well as those of other Greek mathematical astronomers was to consider the complicated astronomical models no more than mathematical models which helped to compute the motion of the planets and which did not in themselves have any 'reality'.

40. See P. Duhem, *Le systeme du monde*, vol. 11, Paris, 1914, pp. 119ff., where this treatise in its Latin version is analyzed; also Nasr, *Science and Civilization in Islam*, pp. 175–178. As these words were being written one of the scientific journals in the Soviet Union reported the discovery of a treatise by Ibn al-Haytham in Arabic on the nature of the heavens. Perhaps after several centuries the original of this important work has been discovered.
profoundly, which transformed astronomy in India\(^{41}\) and even added a new chapter to Chinese astronomy.\(^{42}\) But more than all this it provided a science vast enough to embrace the mathematical genius of a Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī and the poetic vision of a Sanāʿī or an ‘Aṭṭār, a science able to depict a cosmos in which eclipses and motions of planets were calculated with all the accuracy needed by a normal human civilization and in which at the same time the sacred horse \textit{al-Burāq} could raise the Holy Prophet in his ascension or \textit{al-mīrāj} to the Divine Throne (\textit{al-‘arsh}), a cosmos where every contemplative following the example of the Holy Prophet could ascend through the power of the Spirit to the heavens and participate in that Divine force which Dante describes as the love that moves the heavens and the stars, \textit{L’Amor che muove il sole e l’altre stelle}.

\(^{41}\) Long before Jai Singh Islamic astronomy had entered into India and had many followers especially during the Mogul period when important works such as the \textit{Zīj-i shāhjahān} by Farīd al-Dīn al-Dihlawī were composed.

Chapter VII
Physics

The word physics as understood today is of course of relatively recent usage. Sir Isaac Newton still referred to himself as a natural philosopher and in this sense shared a world view common with the Muslim scientists. In the Islamic sciences also there was no separate discipline corresponding to physics in its modern sense. There was natural philosophy (ṭabi‘iyyāt) which included the life and the earth sciences as well as physics; and there were certain sciences such as optics which although understood today as branches of physics, were classified by Muslims among the mathematical sciences. It is, therefore, mostly for the sake of the modern reader that such disciplines as optics and the study of machines and automata are discussed in this section rather than elsewhere, so that the reader may gain some inkling of the manner in which Islamic science dealt with what are now called the physical sciences and the range of subjects in this domain with which Muslim scientists were primarily concerned.

The General Principles of Physics

As far as the principles or philosophy of physics and also the philosophy of nature are concerned, numerous Muslim scientists and philosophers dealt extensively with the subject and in fact produced a treasury of thought containing the profoundest philosophy and also theology of nature which is of great pertinence even — and indeed especially — today.¹ The principles of natural philosophy were usually discussed, following Ibn Sinā, under the heading of fam al-samā‘ al-ṭabi‘i (literally ‘section dealing with what is “heard” concerning natural philosophy’)² and the most extensive discussion of the subject in Islam is in fact given by Ibn Sinā in his Shifa‘.³ Nearly every major Muslim philosopher, whether specifically interested in physics or not, from al-Kindī to Mullā Ṣadrā and Sabziwārī devoted a section of his writings to it, since in traditional doctrines physics is an application of metaphysics and the principles of physics

2. Scholars cannot agree why such a name has been given to this section of natural philosophy. One explanation is that it concerns what the student ‘hears’ before every-
3. We have analyzed this work extensively in our An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, chap. 13, ‘Principles of Natural Philosophy'.
are to be found solely in metaphysics and nowhere else. Moreover, scientists, theologians and even gnosis were interested in the principles of natural philosophy, in such questions as the nature of time, space, matter and motion. As a result several different schools of thought developed concerning the principles of physics and natural philosophy itself, schools which ranged from those interested in experimenting with natural forces to those which sought to provide a purely symbolical science of the natural world and to aid man in the contemplation of nature as the theophany of the Divine Names and Qualities, of realities which stand above and beyond nature.  

The most widespread Muslim school of thought dealing with the principles of natural philosophy is without doubt the Peripatetic, which in this as in other domains saw Aristotle mostly through the eyes of his Alexandrian commentators and in fact followed Aristotle more closely in this field than in other branches of philosophy. The doctrine of hylomorphism, the definition of space as the inner surface of the body which is tangential to the outer surface of the body in question, and the consideration of time as the measure of motion were taken over from Aristotle and given their most extensive treatment by Ibn Sinā in his Shifa' and Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī in his Sharḥ al-ıshārāt wa-l-tanbihāt (Commentary upon the Book of Directives and Remarks) (of Ibn Sinā). It was only in the question of motion, and even there in the special problem of projectile motion, that, as we shall shortly observe, even the Muslim Peripatetics criticized Aristotle and developed ideas which had major consequences for the later history of physics.

A second group of Muslim thinkers who produced ideas of great importance in this field were the anti-Peripatetic philosophers and scientists such as Muhammad ibn Zakariyyā' al-Rāzī (the Latin Rhazes), al-Bīrūnī and Abū'l-Barakāt al-Baghdādī. Each of these men followed an independent line of thought but shared this one feature with the others in the group: he was critical of the prevalent Peripatetic natural philosophy. Al-Rāzī developed an independent cosmology based upon the five eternals (al-qudamā’ al-khamsah) which included time and space and drew mainly from Manichaean sources as well as from Plato’s Timaeus. He also developed a special form of atomism which some have considered to have originated in India.  

As for al-Bīrūnī, he provided what is perhaps the most devastating criticism of Aristotelian physics of the mediaeval period in the questions and answers he exchanged with Ibn Sinā on problems of natural philosophy. Al-Bīrūnī criticized many of the fundamental premises of Aristotelian physics such as hylomorphism, the natural place of objects in the sub-lunar region, the denial of the vacuum, etc., appealing to both reason and observation of the natural phenomena and even to experiment. These questions and answers which contain in fact two sets of questions by al-Bīrūnī and two sets of answers, the first by Ibn Sinā and the second by his student al-Ma'sūmī, are one of the highlights of this aspect of Islamic thought and reveal the profundity with which the basic concepts of the physics of the day were discussed and analyzed.

Al-Baghdādī, the Jewish philosopher who towards the end of his life embraced Islam, was a powerful, original thinker in the domain of natural philosophy. His Kitāb al-mu'tabar (The Book of


6. See S. Pines, Beiträge zur islamischen Atomenlehre, Berlin, 1936 (translated into Arabic with extensive new notes by Muhammad Abū Ridah, as Madhhab al-dharrah ‘ind al-muslimin, Cairo, 1946). This classical work also contains, in addition to an analysis of the atomism of Rāzī, sections on the views of Irānshahrī, Nāṣir-i Khusraw and other less-studied Islamic philosophers.

7. The Arabic text of this important exchange was edited critically for the first time by S. H. Nasr and M. Mohaghegh as, al-As‘ilah wa-l-a‘tāibah, Tehran, 1973. Many of these questions have been translated and analyzed in Nasr, An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, pp. 167ff.
What has been Established by Personal Reflection) contains many ideas of interest in physics. He not only continued the criticism against the Aristotelian theory of projectile motion, but also studied the question of acceleration of falling bodies and dealt with time in a new manner, considering it as being related to the very process of becoming rather than to translational motion alone. His speculations on accelerated motion are also amazing for he was perhaps the first person to have rejected the Aristotelian theory that a constant force causes uniform motion with a velocity proportional to the force.

A third and major school of thought directly concerned with the principles of natural philosophy is, strangely enough, that of the theologians (mutakallimûn). The theologians, Sunni and Shi'ite alike, were not especially interested in problems of physics, but each group was drawn into this subject through the implications of its theological studies. The Shi'ite schools, both Ismâ'îli and Twelve-Islam, developed 'philosophies of nature' similar to those found in the philosophical and theosophical schools associated with them. But Sunni theology, both Mu'tazilite and Ash'arite, developed a distinct atomism which left an indelible mark upon their discussion of the principles of natural philosophy.

Some of the theologians such as the Mu'tazilite al-Nazâm and the Ash'arite al-Bâqillâni were more directly interested in questions of physics and others less so. But altogether, the writings of these theological schools contain numerous pages devoted to a 'philosophy of nature' based upon the atomistic point of view. In order to 'safeguard' the Divine Omnipotence these theologians segmented reality in such a way that the only remaining nexus between things was the 'vertical' or Divine Cause, the horizontal cause being totally obliterated. They first of all believed that bodies are composed not of the form and matter of the Peripatetics, but of atoms (in Arabic ājûz 'lâ yatafazzû') which are, however, unlike the atoms of Democritus, dimensionless. They also believed that time consists of separate moments and space of discontinuous points. As for projectile motion, they propounded a curious theory called 'i'timâd or 'support', according to which the motion of one object by nature engenders the motion of another after it. Altogether, they conceived of a totally atomized world in which only the Divine Will reigns, and where the relation between various objects and events which appear to man to be of a causal nature is seen in fact to be the result of what has been called occasionalism. Fire does not burn because it is in its nature to do so, but because God has willed it. It is only the habit of man's mind to see the burning as an effect of fire. Hence miracles are called events which literally 'break the habit' (kharîq al-‘âdah) of the mind in its perception of external reality.

The Muslim philosophers and theosophers of nearly all schools rose against this view and defended causality as did most of the Shi'ite theologians. A severe debate took place, the best known chapter of which is that between al-Ghazzâlî and Ibn Rushd. The debate involved the whole of philosophy and theology but interestingly enough a central theme that ran throughout concerned physics and especially the nature of causality.

The theologians conceived of atomism in order to assert the Divine Will in the very matrix of its Critique by Averroes and Aquinas, London 1958; and the numerous studies of H. A. Wolfson, especially his Crescas' Critique of Aristotle and The Philosophy of the Kalam, Cambridge (U.S.A.), 1974.


9. Numerous works have been devoted since the 19th century by Western orientalists to the problem of Kalam, in which many of them in fact sought erroneously the equivalent of Christian theology. See for example, L. Gardet and M. M. Anawati: Introduction à la théologie musulmane, Paris, 1948; M. Horten, Die Religiöse Gedankwelt des Volkes in Heutigen Islam, 2 vols., Halle, 1917–1918; M. Fakhry, Islamic Occasion.


11. See S. Pines, 'Études sur Awhâd al-Zamân . . .'

of the world which surrounds man and in conformity with a certain 'atomism' associated with the Semitic mentality. Today a great deal of interest is being shown in their ideas because of quite different reasons. David Hume offered nearly the same arguments and in fact gave some of the same examples as the Muslim theologians in his attack upon the notion of causality and began a phase in European thought which, combined with the developments within physics since the beginning of this century, is mostly responsible for the current interest in Ash’arite natural philosophy. But it must be remembered that the Muslim theologians sought to assert the primacy of the Divine Will while Hume and the empiricists wanted to destroy the very power of human reason to perceive causality and refused to have recourse to any higher principle. The results of the two schools stand therefore at the very opposite poles of the intellectual spectrum and should never be confused with each other. Empiricism is closely wedded to modern science while in Islam most of the outstanding scientists were philosophers or Sufis and not theologians. The theologians who negated causality only contributed to the field of science by providing criticism which forced the Muslim philosophers and scientists to develop their own teachings to provide answers for them. They thus played a role of some importance in the Islamic sciences, and especially physics, without, however, providing the background for the development of the sciences in any way comparable to the role of empiricism vis à vis modern science in the West.

Yet another school which developed a distinct physics of its own is that of the Illuminationists (ishrâqiyya). Suhravardi, the founder of the school, gave the basis for a 'physics of light' in his Ḥikmat al-ishrâq (Theosophy of the Orient of Light) followed by his commentators, such as Muḥammad’ al-Shahrûzûrî and Qûţb al-Dîn al-Shirāzî, the latter one of the most outstanding of Muslim physicists. In this school, the Aristotelian theory of hylomorphism is rejected in favour of one in which the very substance of the world is considered to be light, and 'matter' no more than 'darkness' (ghasaq) or the absence of light. Suhravardi also removed the barrier between the sublunar world and the planets and considered the whole region from the fixed stars below to be dominated by the same forces and laws. For him the heavenly part or the 'orient' of the cosmos begins with the region beyond the fixed stars. But more than anything else Suhravardi developed a symbolic science of the cosmos including of course the natural world which is described with great beauty in his visionary recitals.

Finally, mention must be made of the physics developed by Šadr al-Dîn Shirāzī (Mullâ Šadrâ), the outstanding Safavid theosopher, in his various works, especially the Asfâr al-arba’ah (The Four Journeys) which set the foundation for the school of 'transcendent theosophy' (al-ḥikmat al-muta’alîyyah). This school, which is still dominant in Persia today, draws heavily upon the Sufism of Ibn ‘Arabi as well as earlier schools of Islamic philosophy and theology. Although many works have been devoted to Mullâ Šadrâ during the past two decades, a period which has witnessed a veritable revival of his teachings in Persia and a growing interest in him in the West, still not enough research has been carried out on his specifically cosmological and physical doctrines and theories. Here, suffice it to say that Mullâ Šadrâ developed the idea of trans-substantial motion (al-ḥaraka’t al-jawhariyyah) which in contrast to Aristotelian physics made motion a property of the substance of physical objects and not only of their accidents. Hence, the whole question of motion and time as well as mechanics and


dynamics was seen in a new perspective. He even spoke of the three dimensions of space and time as the four dimensions determining physical existence. He also divorced the arguments of traditional metaphysics from their reliance upon Ptolemaic astronomy and in this way safeguarded this perennial wisdom from the types of attack made upon it in the West by those who had rejected the Ptolemaic cosmos for astronomical reasons and did not have the perspicacity to understand its symbolic significance beyond purely astronomical considerations. The ‘natural philosophy’ developed by Mullâ Ṣadrâ is one of the last monuments of Islamic thought in this domain, and of great import in the present-day impasse which modern science faces precisely because of the lack of a natural philosophy which would do justice to the reality and fullness of the natural world.

Mechanics and Dynamics

From the point of view of the later development of physics the contribution of Muslims to the whole question of force and motion is of great importance and has come to occupy a central position in the concerns of Western historians of science. Ever since the pioneering works of P. Duhem and E. Mach, followed by the research of such scholars as A. Meier, E. J. Dijksterhuis, J. Murdoch and others, have made known the importance of late Scholastic works in the criticism of Aristotelian physics and in providing the roots for many of the ideas of Galileo and Newton, an even greater degree of interest has been shown in the works of Islamic authors who in turn influenced the late Scholastics.

The Muslim philosophers and scientists developed several concepts of major importance concerning the problem of motion. Following the criticism by the Christian philosopher John Philoponos of Aristotle’s theory of motion, Ibn Sinâ developed the concept of mayl (literally inclination, the Latin inclinatio) to explain projectile motion, this weakest link in Aristotelian physics. John Philoponos had asserted that the force which causes projectile motion imparts to the moving body a motive force which the Latins called impetus, a force which is gradually spent when a body moves in a void so that the movement comes to an end, contrary to Aristotle’s assertion that there would be no way to stop projectile motion in a void. Ibn Sinâ developed this idea for projectile motion encountering resistance such as air and is responsible for the inclinatio theory which was further elaborated by Abu’l-Barakât al-Baghdâdi and which also became known to the Scholastics. In his Pisan Dialogue Galileo makes use of the impetus theory which goes back originally to John Philoponos and which owes its development to several Muslim figures, especially those already mentioned.

A second important concept which was developed by the Muslims is that of momentum, described by Ibn al-Haytham in his Kitâb al-manâzîr (Optical Thesaurus) and called quwwat al-harakah. Considering the significance of this concept and its persistence throughout all the cycles of the history of physics even to the modern period, the contribution of Ibn al-Haytham and other Muslim physicists who developed this concept becomes clear.

Yet another Muslim contribution of note is what has become known in the West as ‘Avempacean dynamics’ since it is associated with the name of the Andalusian philosopher Ibn Bâjjah (the Latin Avempace). Again in his Pisan Dialogue, in criticizing the Aristotelian theory according to which if \( V = \) velocity, \( P = \) motive power and \( M = \) the resisting medium, then \( V = P/M \), Galileo asserts that \( V = P - M \) so that in a vacuum where \( M = 0 \) the velocity does not become infinite. Actually Galileo was basing himself upon Ibn Bâjjah who became known to the West through Ibn Rushd’s quotation of his views while the latter was commenting upon Book IV of the Physics of Aristotle.

The Muslims also made extensive studies of gravity and such men as Ibn Sinâ, Ibn al-Haytham, Abu’l-Barakât, Fakhr al-Din al-Râzi and Ibn Bâjjah presented ideas of great interest on the subject. The Muslims knew that the these discussions in the writings of Ibn al-Haytham, Ibn Sinâ and other Muslim scientists. See also Nasr, Science and Civilization in Islam, pp. 313–316.

16. See Jalâl Shawqi, Turâth al-’arab fi’l-mikânîkâ, Cairo, 1973, p. 51. Ibn al-Haytham also made other important contributions to physics. He studied the laws of motion, knew the principle of inertia, and conceived of the void and space in a manner reminiscent of the 17th century physicists who developed classical mechanics and dynamics. The work of Shawqi summarizes most of

acceleration of a body falling under the force of gravity did not depend upon its mass and also qualitatively that the power of attraction between two bodies increased as their distance decreased and as their mass increased.\textsuperscript{18} Moreover, Ibn Bājja‘ah conceived of gravitation as an inner form which moved bodies from within in the same way that the intelligences moved the heavens. His arguments again found their echoes in Galileo.

Altogether the Muslims made important contributions to various branches of mechanics and dynamics, departing in many ways from Aristotelian physics and even developing such cardinal concepts as momentum. They, however, never quantified physics completely nor ignored the symbolic nature of the natural world. Even their quantitative studies moved within the orbit of a cosmos which remained hierarchic, with each level of existence symbolizing the states above. They were moreover able to achieve what they did from the point of view of the history of physics without bringing about the calamities caused directly or indirectly by Galileo and his followers because the science developed by these Muslim figures always remained bound within the hierarchy of knowledge. The greatest of Muslim physicists like al-Birūnī, Ibn al-Haytham and Qutb al-Din al-Shirāzī accepted willingly this hierarchy and never attempted to make a quantitative science of the Universe central or relegate to the periphery the qualitative science of things which is the most essential precisely because at its highest level it alone can deal with the essences of things.\textsuperscript{19}

**Optics**

One of the fields of physics to which Muslims made important contributions is optics, and that mostly thanks to Ibn al-Haytham who in the 4th/10th century established this science upon new foundations and made of it an organized discipline, hence gaining the title of ‘father of optics’. Before Ibn al-Haytham, several Muslim scientists had been concerned with optics, but following mostly the Greek sources such as Aristotle, Euclid, Heron, Archimedes, Ptolemy and Theon with which they were well acquainted. Already al-Kindī had written a work on optics based upon Euclid which in its Latin translation as De Aspectus first introduced Euclid’s Optics to the West. Al-Kindī also wrote a treatise explaining the reason for the blueiness of the sky.

Others after al-Kindī such as al-Nayrizī who studied atmospheric phenomena and Ibn Sinā and al-Bīrūnī who discussed the finiteness of the speed of light contributed to optics while such physicians as Ḥunayn ibn Ishāq and al-Rāzī studied the anatomy and physiology of the eye. But it was Ibn al-Haytham who brought about a major transformation in the whole of this science and who made so many discoveries that he has been called the most important student of optics between Euclid and Kepler. Some have also considered him the greatest of the Muslim physicists, taking the latter term in its modern sense. Ibn al-Haytham wrote numerous works on optics and related subjects such as atmospheric phenomena, some of these, like the treatise on twilight, having also been translated into Latin.\textsuperscript{20} But his major opus on the subject, which is also the most important mediaeval work on optics, is the Kitāb al-manāẓir (Optical Thesaurus), first published in Basle in 1572. Not only did this work influence earlier authors such as Witelo, Roger Bacon and Peckham, but its effect is even to be seen in the optical works of Kepler and Newton. His Latin name, Alhazen, was as familiar to students of optics in the West as that of Euclid.

The Kitāb al-manāẓir, in which Ibn al-Haytham reveals his competence in medicine as well as physics, begins by studying the anatomy and physiology of the eye. He traces the functioning of the eye from the optic nerve originating in the brain to the eye itself, whose various parts, such as the conjunctive, iris, cornea and lens, he describes in a masterly fashion, pointing out the

\textsuperscript{18} See Shawqi, op. cit., pp. 75ff.

\textsuperscript{19} On this question, see Nasr, op. cit., pp. 144–145.

role of each in vision. He also shows the interrelation between the various parts of the eye and how the eye acts as a unitary organ and dioptric system during the process of vision. Ibn al-Haytham, like Ibn Sīnā and several other Muslim scientists, did not hold that rays issue from the eye but believed that during the process of vision rays of light reach the eye from the object which is seen.

Ibn al-Haytham made contributions to catoptrics and dioptrics as well as to the study of atmospheric phenomena. As far as catoptrics is concerned, during the period from Euclid to Theon numerous mathematicians and physicists had made notable contributions to the subject. Ibn al-Haytham continued their studies but concentrated his efforts especially in the study of parabolical and spherical mirrors, including their aberration. The problem which in fact has come to be known by his name to this day – Alhazen’s problem – concerns a spherical mirror: given a spherical mirror with an object and its image reflected in the mirror, find the point of reflection. The solution of this problem leads to a fourth degree equation which Ibn al-Haytham solved by geometric means. The same problem was solved several centuries later by Huygens algebraically. In the field of catoptrics Ibn al-Haytham was the first to demonstrate the second law of reflection, namely that the incident ray, the normal and the reflected rays are in the same plane.

As far as the study of refraction is concerned, Ibn al-Haytham made many more original contributions. Perhaps the most important of these is that a ray of light takes the easier and quicker path, a thesis which enunciates the principle of ‘least time’ associated with the name of Fermat. Ibn al-Haytham also applied the rectangle of velocities at the surface of refraction long before Newton and only failed to discover Snell’s Law because he was used to calculating by means of chords rather than sine functions. Ibn al-Haytham also made numerous experiments with glass cylinders immersed in water to study refraction and also sought to determine the magnifying power of lenses.
As far as atmospheric phenomena are concerned, as mentioned in the chapter on
astronomy, Ibn al-Haytham's studies were of major importance for both astronomical observations and meteorology. He determined the thickness of the atmosphere, the effect of the atmosphere upon observation of celestial phenomena, the beginning and end of twilight (it begins and ends when the sun is 19° below the horizon), the reason why the sun and the moon are larger on the horizon than in the middle of the sky and many other optical effects of the atmosphere and related phenomena. His contributions to this domain are of no less interest than those in pure optics.

Ibn al-Haytham was at once philosopher, mathematician and experimentalist. He devised a lathe with the help of which he made lenses for his experiments. He studied the *camera obscura* mathematically for the first time and made an experiment which also for the first time made possible the experimental demonstration that light travels in a straight line. He was able to plan experiments carefully and at the same time analyze problems mathematically. That is why he is considered such an outstanding physicist by contemporary historians of science. Yet, even Ibn al-Haytham moved within the matrix of the Islamic intellectual universe. He was also a philosopher of note, a man who, while performing experiments on light, never forgot that 'God is the light of the heavens and the earth.'

Strangely enough, during the period immediately following Ibn al-Haytham, no work comparable to his in stature appeared in the realm of optics. Even the great Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī in his commentary upon Euclid's Optics ignored all that Ibn al-Haytham had done. But probably because of the spread, at that time, in Persia, of the school of Illumination (*ishrāq*), which is based upon light, a renewal of interest in optics is to be observed in the 7th-13th century leading to major new discoveries. Ḥūṣayn al-Dīn al-Shīrāzī,

Naṣīr al-Dīn's associate at Maragha, discussed Ibn al-Haytham's views in his treatment of optics in his *Nihāyat al-ḥadīq.* Moreover, Ḥūṣayn al-Dīn himself made a special study of the rainbow and was the first to give a qualitatively correct explanation of it.

In Antiquity, Aristotle and Seneca had tried to explain the rainbow, but unsuccessfully. Ḥūṣayn al-Dīn, aware of this as well as earlier Muslim scientists' efforts, applied the optics of Ibn al-Haytham to explain the cause of the rainbow as a combination of reflection and refraction through drops of water. His own student, Kamāl al-Dīn al-Fārisī, who wrote the most important commentary upon Ibn al-Haytham entitled *Taqīṣ al-manaẓ'ir* (*The Revision of the Optics*), followed Ḥūṣayn al-Dīn's ideas and made an experiment based upon them. He suspended a spherical glass in a dark room and studied the effect of rays of light cast upon the sphere through a hole. He discovered that the primary rainbow is caused by two refractions and one reflection and the secondary rainbow by two refractions and two reflections. See A. Sayili, 'Al-Qarāfī and his Explanation of the Rainbow', *Isis*, vol. 32, 1940, pp. 16-26. For the history of the discovery of the cause of the rainbow, see C. B. Boyer, *The Rainbow from Myth to Mathematics*, New York, 1959.

---

The Balance and the Measurement of Specific Densities

As a major civilization concerned with trade and daily transactions in all their different facets, the Muslims naturally devoted a great deal of attention to the question of weights and measures (al-awzān wa'l-maqādir), to which in fact a special branch of the Sacred Law (Shari'ah) is devoted. In the traditional Muslim city, a person is chosen with the specific duty of controlling the correct use of various units in commercial transactions, the title given to such a person being in Arabic muhtasib, literally 'he who reckons'. Numerous means for measuring different commodities were invented or adopted from earlier civilizations, some of them surviving to this day in certain parts of the Islamic world. But this whole question is perhaps of greater concern to the student of economic and commercial aspects of Islamic civilization than to the sciences as such, although the determination of various units of measurement is of course also basic to any study of the sciences making use of these measurements.

There is one aspect of this question, however, to which Muslims devoted a great deal of attention beyond everyday commercial needs, and that is the development of the balance (al-mizān) as a scientific instrument to measure the specific weight of various metals, minerals and alloys. The writings of Archimedes, as already mentioned, were well known to Muslims and therefore they were fully aware of the Archimedes principle. From the time of al-Ma'mūn, the balance was developed to make use of this principle to measure specific weights. Al-Bīrūnī is noted for his careful measurements of the specific weights of several metals and minerals in his Kitāb al-jawāhir. Khayyām wrote a treatise on the subject as did Abū Ḥātim al-Isfāzārī. But the most famous treatise on the subject is the Kitāb mizān al-ḥikmah (The Book of the Balance of Wisdom) of 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Khāzīnī, a book whose very title evokes the idea of the cosmic balance of Jābir ibn Ḥāyān. Al-Khāzīnī made use of the works of Archimedes as well as his Muslim predecessors such as al-Nayrizī and especially al-Bīrūnī to develop the balance as a refined instrument for the measurement of specific weights. He was even aware of the role of heat in affecting the density of objects.

The famous eureka story of Archimedes is mentioned by al-Khāzīnī and, basing himself on the Archimedes principle, he developed a formula for determining the respective weights of gold and silver in an alloy made of the two metals. If \( X \) = the weight of the silver in the alloy; \( A \) = the absolute weight of the alloy; \( S \) = the specific gravity of the alloy; \( d_1 \) = the specific gravity of gold; and \( d_2 \) = the specific gravity of silver, then:

\[
\frac{1}{d_1} \cdot \frac{1}{S} = \frac{d_1}{d_1 - d_2}
\]

The treatise of al-Khāzīnī shows that the Muslim physicists could make careful measurements of the specific weight as well as the absolute weight of any body composed of either one or two simple substances. Little further refinement was made upon al-Khāzīnī's treatise in later centuries, but fine balances both accurate and of artistic beauty have continued to be made almost to the present day throughout the Islamic world.

22. The whole question of weights and measures in Islam has been treated by numerous authors. As far as the history of Islamic science is concerned, those of Wiedemann in the Aufsätze . . . are of particular importance. See also W. Hinz, Islamische Masse und Gewichte umgekehrt ins metrische System, Leiden, 1970.


24. This important treatise on statics and especially hydrostatics was made known to the West in the 19th century through the translation of N. Khanikoff, 'The Book of the Balance of Wisdom', Journal of the American Oriental Society, 1860, pp. 1–128. See also E. Wiedemann, 'al-Mizān' in the old Encyclopaedia of Islam.

**Simple Machines and Mechanical Gadgets**

Many of the Muslim scientists also devoted themselves to the study of the laws of simple machines, basing themselves on both the Archimedean and the pseudo-Aristotelian schools, the latter associated with the *Mechanica*. They also knew the *Mechanica* of Hero of Alexandria and the *Pneumattica* of Philo of Byzantium. These and other Greek and Alexandrian works served as the basis for their research in this domain.

As far as laws of simple machines are concerned, as early as the 3rd/9th century Thābit ibn Qurrah wrote his famous work on the lever which has come to be known in the West as *Liber Karatorium* and in which he sought to derive the law of the lever from the principles of dynamics following the pseudo-Aristotelian tradition rather than Archimedes. In Baghdad the same interests were pursued by the Banū Mūsā and other mathematicians and from that period onward numerous works appeared dealing with the subject. Even al-Khāzini's already cited work on the

---


228. Wiedemann has devoted numerous other studies to this subject in the collection of the *Aufsätze...*
balance is as important for the study of centres of
gavity of various bodies as it is for hydrostatics.

Besides works concerned with physical
laws of levers, wheels, etc., there also appeared a
series of writings on various mechanical devices,
gadgets, automata, etc., again following the
Alexandrian school. This branch of science is
called 'ībn al-ḥiyal in Arabic and has always been
related in the Muslim mind with the occult
sciences and magic, as the word itself whose
root means stratagem or ruse, shows. From
the treatise of the Banū Mūsā on the balance
(qaraṣṭān), those attributed to Ibn Sīnā such as the
Miʿyar al-ʿuqūl (The Standard of the Intelligences)
(but written by his students), to the work
of the 7th/13th century author Ibn al-Sāʿāṭī who
described the clock of Damascus, there appeared
a series of works describing complicated
machines and gadgets which caught the imagination
of Muslims as being concerned with the unusual
and in fact with what lies for the most part outside
the normal preoccupations of men. This type of
work culminated in the well-known work of
Bāḍīʿ al-Zamān Ismāʿīl ibn Razzāz Abūl-Izz
al-Jazārī Kitāb fi maʿrifat al-ḥiyal al-handasiyyah
(The Book of Knowledge of Ingenious Mechanical
Devices) which, because of the variety of its
content and its beautifully illustrated manuscipts found in relative profusion, has become
the best-known work of its kind in the West.27
In this work, which consists of six parts, fifty
complicated mechanical devices such as clepsy-
dras and fountains, some of practical use and
others more for amusement, are described, fol-
lowing again the tradition of the Alexandrians.
Even after al-Jazārī, interest in such problems
continued, some scientists like Qayṣar al-Ḥanāfī
writing works of a more practical concern, for
example his treatise on the water wheel;28 others,
like some of the Safavid and Ottoman authors,
writing on automata and the like which were a
source of wonder and served as pastimes for
princes and rulers. Al-Jazārī's own treatise was
translated from Arabic into Persian as late as the
13th/19th century.

27. See A. K. Coomaraswamy The Treatise of al-Jazari on
Automata, Boston, 1924; and D. Hill, The Book of
Knowledge of Ingenious Mechanical Devices, Dordrecht–
Boston, 1974. The work has also been translated and
analyzed in German by E. Wiedemann in the Nova
Acta and several other journals. See Sarton, Introduc-

28. Al-Ḥanafī is also responsible for the famous celestial
globe which is now to be found in the Naples Museum.
Plates 90, 91, 92 and 93. Various mechanical devices from al-Jazari.
It is of great importance for an understanding of Islamic science as well as technology and their difference from modern science and technology to study the role in Islamic civilization of these treatises and the complicated machines they describe. Of course many of these treatises were concerned with practical technology, describing wind-mills, water-mills, architectural elements, irrigation problems, distilling and other chemical processes, military equipment, etc. What is of basic interest to note here is that the technology they dealt with was one which utilized natural forces within the environment in question, making the maximum use of human skills and causing the minimum amount of disturbance within the natural environment. Certain of the other treatises described complicated machines which are most like what modern technology has developed during the past two centuries. But it was precisely this kind of technology which the Muslims never took seriously as a possible way of changing their economic life and means of production. The fruit of these treatises was the making of complicated clocks and gadgets as if the Muslims wanted to show that the only safe kind of complicated machine is a toy. For them these machines always recalled the strange inventions of the Alexandrians who made temple doors which opened when the light of the sun shone upon them and achieved other amazing feats that passed into Muslim folklore as well as science.29

29. Even the great Andalusian Sufi and seer Ibn ‘Arabi described in his Futūḥāt al-makkīyyah his own vision of one of these Alexandrian temples.
Figure 70. A page from a manuscript on mechanical devices.
Physics

Figures 71 and 72. From a Maghribi work on making canons.

Figures 73a and 73b. A device to make a canon, from Mogul India.
Islamic civilization had the means to make complicated machines and apply them to the problems of the daily life of the Islamic community. But like the Chinese who had gunpowder but never made guns, the Muslims never took that step which would mean the creation of a technology out of harmony with the natural environment. Their works on machines dealt with a variety of subjects all the way from agricultural and transportational devices which were actually used in everyday life to complicated clocks which were the joy of caliphs and princes, to other complicated gadgets and devices which at their extreme became combined with magic and magical practices. They did not make practical use of all they knew in this domain, feeling instinctively the danger of the development of a technology which makes use of metals and fire, both elements alien to the natural environment, and which therefore ultimately results in the loss of that equilibrium vis à vis nature which is so central to the Islamic perspective and whose destruction is such a danger for modern man.

In physics itself, as seen in the above pages, Muslims made major contributions to various branches of the sciences and would need to be considered in any thorough history of the subject from the Western point of view. But the significance of their studies from the Islamic point of view becomes clear only when considered in the light of the total structure of Islam and its civilization. The Muslim physicists studied various phenomena with the exactness of a physicist in the modern sense but did not secularize the cosmos they were studying because they never lost sight of the totality in order to gain knowledge of the part. They knew that the higher can never be sacrificed for the lower except at the cost of intellectual and spiritual suicide, and they were aware that a certain amount – and only a certain amount – of science in the modern sense can be developed within the traditional cosmos provided this science knows its limit and does not expect ‘progress’ indefinitely in a domain which is by nature finite.

The 9th/15th century Persian Sufi poet ‘Abd al-Rahmān Jāmī seemed to have a presentiment of the present day predicament of man, who in his attempt to gain knowledge of the atom has lost sight of the spiritual empyrean. In one of his quatrains, he says,

I lost my intellect, soul, religion and heart,  
In order to know an atom in perfection.  
But no one can know the essence of the atom completely.  
How often must I repeat that no one shall know it;  
then farewell!
Part Four
The Applied Sciences
Chapter VIII
Medicine and Pharmacology

‘Abū Dardā once said: ‘O Prophet of God (Muḥammad), if I am cured of my sickness and am thankful for it, is it better than if I were sick and bore it patiently? And the Holy Prophet replied: Verily, the Prophet of God loves sound health just as you do.’

(prophetic hadith)

Islamic medicine and its allied subjects such as pharmacology, surgery and the like drew their spiritual sustenance from the message of Islam and received their nourishment from the rich soil of Graeco-Alexandrian, Indian and Persian medicine. The result was the creation of an extensive field embracing nearly every branch of the medical sciences, some fourteen centuries of history and a vast geographical area stretching from southern Spain to Bengal, for in this particular field nearly all the regions of the Islamic world made some contributions. This fact, added to the nature of Islamic medicine which is at once an applied science, an art and in fact an aspect of the whole of life touching upon activities ranging from eating to bathing, has caused many scholars to separate medicine from the other sciences and to treat its history as a discipline distinct from the history of the other Islamic sciences. In fact to do justice to all the branches of Islamic medicine it would really be necessary to devote a separate study to it. If it is nevertheless treated here, albeit in summary fashion, as a chapter within a general work on Islamic science, it is because no picture of Islamic science itself can be complete even in a relative sense without a glimpse at least of the vast horizons of Islamic medicine. Otherwise, from the point of view of medicine itself, its summary treatment given here of necessity cannot but do injustice to its remarkable richness and variety.

Islam and Islamic Medicine

In the same way that in mathematics the central Islamic doctrine of unity (al-tawḥīd) and its applications accorded with the Pythagorean philosophy of numbers and made the integration of Greek mathematics into the Islamic perspective possible, another basic Islamic doctrine, namely that of harmony and balance, made the philosophy underlying the Hippocratic and Galenic traditions easily digestible by Muslims. The principle of the balance between the natures and the humours became easily a part of the Islamic view of nature because it was but a particular instance of a
universal principle enunciated by Islam and forming one of the cardinal aspects of its view of the cosmos and of man's situation within it. From the metaphysical and cosmological points of view, the principles of Islamic medicine are deeply rooted in the Islamic tradition, although this medicine itself came into being as a result of the integration by Muslims of several older traditions of medicine of which the most important was the Greek.

The whole of Islamic medicine is also related to Islam through the injunctions contained in the Quran and the Hadith concerning health and various questions related in one way or another to medicine. The aspects of the Divine Law (Shari'ah) concerning personal hygiene, dietary habits, ablutions, and many other elements affecting the body are again related to medicine. Finally, esoteric teachings concerning the soul in its relation to the body and the body as the 'temple of the spirit' again create a link between medicine and various aspects of the teachings of Islam. The result is that, whatever historians may say of the Greek, Syriac, Indian or old Persian origins of this or that medical idea or practice, Islamic medicine has always been seen by Muslims as closely related to religion. Certain jurists to be sure have attacked Galen or other medical authorities but then they have supported 'prophetic medicine' in one form or another. Moreover, even among the jurists there have been those who have pointed out that of the 'foreign' sciences only medicine was studied by even one or two of the Companions of the Holy Prophet, and that medical practices which would lead to the regaining of health of body and soul were encouraged from the earliest period of Islam. In any case, to this day within the Islamic world what survives of the traditional medicine in the way of traditional drug stores, baths and the like are closely associated by the mass of the people with the actual practice of religion and are even enfolded within an aura of piety.

The Practice of Islamic Medicine

As far as the practice of medicine is concerned, again Islamic civilization created certain institutions and norms closely related to its own general structure in order to make the teaching and practice of medicine possible. Gradually, the figure of the physician who had originally been usually of Christian, Jewish or even Zoroastrian background or actually a member of these communities, became totally Muslimized and there came into being the Islamic figure of the hakim (literally wise-man or sage) who was at once physician and philosopher as well as master of most of the other traditional sciences.1 Most of the early Islamic philosophers from al-Kindi to Ibn Sinā and Ibn Rushd were in fact accomplished physicians, and some like Muham- mad ibn Zakariyyā' al-Rāzī and Ibn Sinā were unrivalled authorities on medicine.2 As a result, the practice and teaching of medicine was inseparable from the other disciplines and especially from philosophy. Medical knowledge usually reached the student through a figure who stood for the unity of the Islamic sciences and who presented various branches of knowledge to him as grades within a hierarchy rather than as compartmentalized and disparate forms of science.

As far as the actual teaching of medicine is concerned, although its general principles were taught in madrasahs, most of the clinical aspects as well as surgery, pharmacology and the like were taught in the hospitals to which usually a medical school was added. Some outstanding physicians also taught their students in private circles at their homes or other places specially designated for such meetings. A great deal of instruction also took place in family circles or in private dispensaries or apothecaries, especially as far as pharmaco-logy was concerned, for the tradition of generations of one family practising medicine was strong in Islamic civilization for both Muslims and oriental Christians and Jews living among Mus-

---

1. On the centrality of the role and function of the hakim, see our Science and Civilization in Islam, pp. 41–42.

2. According to traditional authorities, since Muslim philosophers considered it below the dignity of philosophy to receive payment for teaching it, they usually practised medicine to earn their living. In the later period of Islamic history, especially in Persia, the role of medicine in this context was often replaced by jurisprudence, although men who were both physicians and philosophers of note have continued to appear up to modern times.
lims. Some of the best-known medical families such as that of Ibn Zuhr in Spain and of Bukhtishū in Persia and Iraq produced well-known physicians for several centuries.\(^3\)

The institution of the hospital was inherited by Muslims from both the Persians and the Byzantines. Already, before the rise of Islam, the hospital at Jundishapur, near the present Persian city of Ahvaz, was a major medical institution in which, in addition to the care of patients, medical instruction was carried out on an extensive basis. In fact, this hospital and medical school complex was the main link of transmission of Graeco-Alexandrian as well as Indian and Persian medicine to Islam.\(^4\) There were also hospitals established by Byzantines in their eastern provinces such as Syria which became rapidly integrated into the Islamic world.

Benefitting from the existence of these institutions, the Muslims soon created their own hospitals.\(^5\) Although al-Walid I is said to have created the first hospital in Islam in the 1st/7th century, the first real hospital with all the required facilities of that day was established by Hārūn al-Rashid in Baghdad, during the 2nd/8th century, and the Christian physician Jibra’il ibn Bukhtishū was called from Jundishapur to head it. It was this hospital which became the pivot of medical activity and the centre for the rise of Islamic medicine. The Baghdad hospital was later headed by such famous physicians as Yūhnān ibn Māsawayh and it served as model for numerous other hospitals in Baghdad, the most famous being the ‘Aqūd founded by the Persian ruler ‘Aqūd al-Dawlah in the 4th/10th century. Hospitals were also established in other Muslim cities such as the one in Rayy which was headed by Muḥammad ibn Zakariyyā’ al-Rāzī before his coming to Baghdad.\(^6\)

Another major hospital was the one established by Nūr al-Dīn al-Zanjī in Damascus in the 6th/12th century, said to have been built from the money received as ransom for one of the Frankish kings. A similar Nūrī hospital was also built in Aleppo. Soon afterwards Șalāḥ al-Dīn al-Ayyūbī constructed the Nāšīrī hospital in Cairo and from then on for several centuries a close link existed between the medical centres of Syria and Egypt. The most notable hospital in Egypt was, however, the Manṣūrī hospital built by al-Manṣūr Qalā‘ūn in the 7th/13th century from an old Fāṭimid palace. The hospital had beds for several thousand patients with different wards specified for various illnesses and separate sections devoted to each of the sexes. It also possessed lecture halls, a library, a mosque and separate administrative quarters.

A century earlier, the Almohad king Ya‘qūb al-Manṣūr built the first large hospital of the Maghrib in Marrakesh and attracted notable physicians such as Ibn Ṭufayl and Ibn Rushd to his court. From then on hospitals continued to be built in the Maghrib, some, like the 7th/13th century one at Salé, built by Mawlay ‘Abd al-Raḥmān, being still in use. Likewise in Tunis, Algeria and Andalusia itself, many hospitals were built whose descriptions remain in various literary sources, and the word bimaristān (a Persian word meaning ‘the place of the sick’), which has always been used in Arabic as the word for hospital, entered into the Spanish language in the form of malastan or marastān.

In the Ottoman empire, hospital building continued to follow the earlier Seljuk and Abbasid models. The first Ottoman hospital was the Dār al-shifā’ in Bursa built in the 8th/14th century followed by that of Mehmēt II built in the 9th/15th century as part of his Külliye. During

---

3. Even now in certain parts of the Middle East, there are Christian and Jewish pharmacists and firms dealing in pharmaceuticals which have been carrying out both the science and the business of administering and dealing in medicaments for several centuries.

4. Jundishapur was a cosmopolitan centre where, in addition to Persians themselves, there were a large number of Syriac-speaking Christians, who formed the main body of the medical faculty and most of whom had emigrated from the cities of Syria such as Edessa, and also a number of Indian physicians well acquainted with Sanskrit medical sources.


6. Al-Rāzī also wrote a book on the necessary characteristics of a hospital entitled Kitāb ji sīfāt al-bimaristān (Book on the Characteristics of the Hospital) cited by Ibn Abī Ṣayyib’s and others.
the same century under the order of Bāyazīd II there was created a set of institutions including a hospital, some of which still stands. As for Istanbul, the great hospitals in that city began to be built from the 10th/16th century onwards, leading directly to the modern hospitals of the 13th/19th century, influenced greatly by the practice of Western medicine.

As for Persia and India, there also accounts of travellers reveal flourishing hospitals in many cities, but there is little doubt that during the last centuries the hospitals built by the Muslims of India were usually on a grander scale than those of Persia. To this day, in fact, the only remnants of large-scale hospitals and dispensaries where Islamic medicine is practised are to be found in the sub-continent, some of the outstanding examples being the Osmania hospital in Hyderabad, Deccan, and the Hamdard Institutes of Delhi and Karachi.

Supported usually by religious endowment (waqf) and also by help from living persons or the state, the hospital became a major scientific institution in the Islamic world. It developed into various types, ranging from general hospitals catering for all kinds of diseases to those specializing in the treatment of lepers or the insane and even animals. The teaching and the practice of Islamic medicine is inseparable from the institution of the hospital which at its height in fact contained, in addition to wards, major libraries, lecture halls and other facilities necessary for the training of medical students.

The practice of Islamic medicine has always been closely connected with the dispensaries and chemists’ shops either adjoining a hospital or functioning independently. The druggist (usually called al-āṭṭār) has, however, always been more involved in the intimate life of the people than the official physician. To this day the traditional druggist himself caters for many of the daily needs of his customers and proposes various drugs for maladies which have not as yet become very serious. His knowledge of various drugs, especially herbs, which comprise most of the traditional medicaments, is often extensive, and
his role from both the medical and the economic points of view is of importance.

Also significant for its medical uses is the traditional bath (ḥammām) which is to be found in one form or another throughout the Islamic world. Because of various forms of bodily purification required by Islamic Law, baths were built from the earliest times and to this day there is no small village without a public bath which is attended regularly for ritual as well as hygienic reasons. But in addition the use of hot and cold air and water and the rub-down or massage which is administered by a professional class trained in this art have been used by Muslim physicians for medical purposes and numerous treatises have been written on the subject such as that of Qustā ibn Lūqā. Ibn Sinā also discusses the medical uses of the bath and he as well as Rāzī are said to have treated some patients in the bath itself.⁸

The traditional use of the Muslim bath is almost a rite of its own. It usually takes several hours. Besides the washing of the body, the rubdown and ritual purification, special liquids are drunk and specified periods spent either in the steam room or the cool waiting-room outside. Physicians have used the bath for all kinds of cures ranging from overcoming headaches to reviving sexual energy. The Turkish bath which is so celebrated in the West is the last chapter in a long history of the bath as both a social and medical institution stretching over the whole of Islamic history. To this day, traditional baths function

7. Some philologists even believe that the word massage itself has its origin in the Arabic massa, whose root means to rub or to touch with one’s hand.

8. It is necessary here to mention the Roman baths which preceded the baths built by Muslims. There is a difference between the two, however. The Roman bath was an important social institution with a minor medical role; the Muslim bath, although also important socially, possesses a much greater medical, as well as religious, significance than its predecessors.
Plate 98. The interior of a Persian bath-house in Kerman.

Figure 74. Vapour rising from a Turkish bath-house in Istanbul.
from Morocco to Persia and Afghanistan, and, although used less medically than before, continue to fulfil medical as well as religious and hygienic functions for those who still wish to be treated according to the teachings of Islamic medicine.

The Theory of Islamic Medicine

The theory of Islamic medicine is related inextricably to the whole of Islamic metaphysics, cosmology and philosophy, because the object of medicine, namely man, is a microcosm who recapitulates within himself the whole of existence and is in fact the key to an understanding of existence, for according to the Arabic dictum al-insan ramz al-wujūd (man is the symbol of existence). Islamic physicians saw the body of man as but an extension of his soul and closely related to both the spirit and the soul. Moreover, it was specially concerned with the interpenetration and interrelation of cosmic forces and the effect of these forces upon man. Muslim physicians remained also fully aware of the ‘sympathy’ between all orders of existence and the mutual action and reaction of one creature upon the other. They, therefore, envisaged the subject of medicine, namely man, to be related both inwardly through the soul and the spirit and ‘outwardly’ through the grades of the macrocosmic hierarchy to the Principle of cosmic manifestation itself. Likewise they sought the principles of medicine in the sciences dealing with the Principle and its manifestations, namely metaphysics and cosmology. Whatever may have been the historical origins of Islamic medicine, its principles cannot be understood save in the light of Islamic metaphysics and cosmological sciences.

The Muslims did adopt much of Greek medicine, especially its theory, but this adoption was possible only because of the traditional nature of this medicine and its concordance with the Islamic conception of the Universe. It must not be forgotten that here as in the domain of philosophy the Muslims considered the origin of this science to be prophetic and sacred and in fact related to the Abrahamic prophetic chain which the Muslims considered to be their own. The rapid assimilation of Greek medical theory into the Islamic perspective is due most of all to this latent possibility within the Islamic perspective itself and the close relation between the idea of the harmony of parts in Hippocratic and Galenic medicine and the concept of balance and harmony so central to Islam. It is not accidental that the theoretical background of Greek medicine belongs to the same schools of Greek philosophy which were easily assimilated into the Islamic perspective and not to those which the Muslims rejected. The reasons for the ‘Muslimization’ of a Hippocrates or Galen are nearly the same as those of a Plato or an Aristotle and are also related to the reasons for the rejection of other schools of Greek thought, such as the Epicurean or the Sophist. Had Greek medicine possessed a theoretical background related to the anti-metaphysical schools of late Antiquity, it is very doubtful whether it would have been integrated so perfectly within the Islamic intellectual universe.

As far as the general theory of Islamic medicine is concerned, its basis rests upon the two cardinal doctrines of all traditional cosmologies, namely the hierarchic structure of the cosmos and the correspondence between the microcosm and the macrocosm alluded to earlier in this book. As for the specific field of medicine itself, it is with the four elements and the four natures that it usually begins its theoretical discussion, leaving the relation between the natures and the elements, cosmological principles which meet solely at the level of unity of metaphysical doctrine.

9. The same holds true for all traditional schools of medicine, whether they be those which influenced the Muslims, such as the Greek, or those which did not, such as the Tibetan and the Chinese. In fact, the very existence of several schools of medicine, all of which are successful in treating illnesses, but are different in their methods, proves that there is not simply one valid system of medicine based upon simple observation of different phenomena. Rather, besides the official modern medicine there are several systems derived from various


11. See also Nasr, ibid., where both these doctrines in their Islamic setting are dealt with thoroughly.
the *materia prima* and form and the imposition of form upon matter to general works on natural philosophy. Concerning the elements and the natures, it must be remembered that in medicine as in physics and alchemy, they must not be thought of as simply the fire, air, water and earth found in nature, nor the cold, heat, dryness and humidity man feels during the various seasons of the year. Rather are they the principles of the gross elements and qualities called by the same names in daily language.\(^{12}\)

The four humours, that is blood, phlegm, yellow bile and black bile are composed of the elements and natures according to the above diagram (Figure 75a). Each humour is related to two natures and two elements and possesses qualities which are at once the same and different from other humours. The humours form the foundation of animal activity and the body of all animals including man is comprised of them. They mix together to form the temperament of each individual. In fact each person possesses a unique temperament as do the organs of his body based upon the particular combination of the humours comprising his constitution. Moreover, the harmony of the humours tends in each case towards a particular type of imbalance; hence some tend to be phlegmatic, others melancholic, etc. Also, each temperament possesses its own heat in addition to the innate heat which everything possesses.

But neither the humours nor their mixture is the cause of life. They are only the vehicle which make possible the manifestation of life. The Muslim physicians believe in the spirit (*rūḥ*)\(^{13}\) which descends upon this mixture of the humours and which is the subtle body standing intermediate between the physical body comprised of the humours and the force of life which comes from the world above. It is worth drawing attention to the similarity between the words *rūḥ* and *riḥ* (the wind or air) in Arabic and to the Galenic doctrine that through the air breathed by the organism the life-force enters the body. It is also of significance to note that in Arabic as in many other languages the words for breath (*nafas*) see also F. E. Peters, *Allah's Commonwealth*, pp. 173ff.; and M. Ullmann, *Die Medizin im Islam*, Leiden, 1970, pp. 97–100.

\(^{12}\) On the theory of Islamic medicine relatively few serious works have appeared in the West where, until quite recently, any view of nature other than that of modern Western science was laughed at and ridiculed. For the works which give a positive exposition of the theories of Islamic medicine see O. C. Gruner, *A Treatise on the Canon of Medicine, Incorporating a Translation of the First Book*, London, 1930; and Hamdard Institute, *Theories and Philosophies of Medicine*, New Delhi, 1962;

\(^{13}\) The medical use of the term *rūḥ* must not be confused with the metaphysical and theological use of this term as the spirit which stands above the soul and belongs to the purely angelic world.
and soul (nafs) are related. Therein lies a profound cosmological principle which is also related to the invocation of the Name of God (dhikr) as the central technique of Sufism for spiritual realization.

The spirit or rūḥ in its medical sense is, according to Muslim physiologists, and following Galen, of three kinds:
1. The vital spirit which is hot and dry, has its centre in the left ventricle of the heart, preserves life, causes the body to grow, move and reproduce, and travels within the arteries.
2. The psychic spirit which is cold and wet, has its centre in the brain, causes sensation and movement and moves within the nerves.
3. The natural spirit which is hot and wet, has its centre in the liver, is concerned with the reception of food, growth and reproduction and travels within the veins.

Each of the spirits produces a series of faculties which carry out its functions. For example, each physical sense has its faculty, the heartbeat its faculty, etc.

In addition to these factors, there operate within man the three souls, namely the vegetable, animal and rational, all of which descend from the world above and each of which possesses its own faculties. The more refined the mixture of the humours the greater the perfection and the more complete and perfect the possibility of receiving the soul. Moreover, in each man, health means the harmony of the humours and illness the disruption of the balance of the constitution. Of course the harmony is never perfect in any person, but relative to his own constitution, health means the re-establishment of the balance of the humours. Diagnosis for such disorders as fever are in fact based on searching for the way in which the balance of the humours has been upset. But for diseases which show overt signs, the most notable sign or signs are made use of for diagnostic purposes and often the disease receives the name of the leading sign connected with it. Even in English to this day people speak of having a fit or a stroke.

14. This is the subject of the well-known ‘faculty psychology’ developed by so many Muslim philosophers and physicians such as Ibn Sinā and referred to earlier in Chapter IV.
15. Modern medicine cannot define the meaning of health in its own terms, whereas for traditional Greek and Islamic medicine the definition of both health and sickness is quite clear.
16. Many traditional sources believed that only the Prophet of Islam as the most perfect of God’s creatures possessed a perfectly balanced temperament, both medically and psychologically.
Beside the internal causes of health, Muslim physicians believed that six external factors are essential and must be present to guarantee the health of the patient. These were usually called the ‘Six Necessities’ (sittah darūriyyah)\(^{17}\) and are as follows:
1. Air (including the effects of various climates, soils, etc.).
2. Food (including times of meals, what should be eaten and drunk and their amount, etc.).
3. Bodily rest and movement (including exercise).
4. Sleep.
5. Emotional rest (including the question of which emotional states help or harm health).
6. Excretion and retention (including the effects of sexual intercourse).\(^{18}\)

The traditional physician who usually knew his patient well sought to restore health not only by examining internal problems but by studying all the different external factors listed here so as to discover the one or several causes which had disrupted the harmony of the humours within the body and vis à vis the environment, causes which can range from having eaten the wrong food to emotional strain.

Since the external world of man is also comprised of the elements possessing various natures, there is a constant action and reaction between the total external environment of man and the humours. First of all, each climate causes the people living within it to have a different type of temperament from people of another climate. Likewise, racial heredity, age, sex, and many other factors influence the temperament. Moreover, all the food and drugs that man consumes possess various natures in different degrees. Hence they too affect the temperament. Health is then a question of living in harmony within oneself and with the environment, taking into full consideration what one eats and drinks in view of each person’s particular inner constitution. There is a vast cycle comprising the individual, the air, water, soil, etc. about him, the food and water he eats and drinks and even cosmic forces further re-

---

17. There was, in fact, a treatise written in the 10th/16th century under that very title by an anonymous author and dedicated to the Indian prince Burhān Nizām Shāh.

18. The all-embracing nature of Islamic medicine which considers both environmental and psychological factors in health can be seen from this aspect of medicine alone.

---

Different Branches of Islamic Medicine

Anatomy and Physiology

Anatomy and physiology formed an inseparable unit in Islamic medicine and in fact served as prelude for all the branches of medicine. Moreover, the study of the anatomy and physiology of the human body remained of the greatest interest to Sufis, theologians and philosophers as well as to physicians, and students of most other traditional disciplines acquired some knowledge of it. In accordance with the Islamic perspective which sees creation as ‘signs’ (āyāt) of God, Muslims considered the study of the human body as of prime importance for an understanding of the wisdom of God so manifest in man, his supreme creation. That is why the Ikhwān al-Ṣafā’ in their Epistles paid so much attention to the numerical symbolism of the parts of the human body and their correspondence with various parts of the cosmos, or Sufis such as al-Ghazzālī and Ibn ‘Arabī dealt so extensively with the symbolism of human anatomy, or a philosopher and theosopher such as Mullā Ṣadrā.

---

19. It is paradoxical that in the highly individualistic modern civilization there is a crass uniformity in medicine which assumes that the reaction of all bodies to a drug is the same or nearly so, whereas in traditional medicine belonging to a civilization in which the individual order is always subservient to the universal order each patient is treated individually and his temperament taken to be a unique blend of the humours never to be found in exactly the same balance in another individual.
turned to an extensive discussion of this subject in his masterly opus, the *Mafātih al-ghayb* (*Keys to the Unseen*). Even Islamic political thinkers such as al-Fārābī explained their theory of human society by appealing to the symbolism of human anatomy.

Islamic Law did not permit the dissection of the human body, although its strict prohibition has been debated by some of the jurists over the ages. Whatever the technical legal status might be, the religious climate in any case opposed an act which appeared as a violation of the respect which is due to God’s most noble creation. As a result, practically no dissections were carried out and Muslims relied heavily upon Galenic anatomy and physiology and its theory of the circulation of the blood and the spirits which are reflected clearly in such famous Islamic texts of anatomy as the *Mukhtasar dar ‘ilm-i tashrīh* (*A Brief Manual of Anatomy*) of ‘Abd al-Majīd al-Baydāwī and the *Tashrīh-i manṣūrī* (*Manṣūr’s Anatomy*) by Maḥmūd ibn Muḥammad ibn Faqīh Ilyās, written during the 7th/13th and 9th/15th centuries respectively. The major departure of Muslims from Galenic anatomy and physiology came with the discovery of the lesser circulation of the blood by Ibn al-Nafīs from which we shall turn soon.

20. As an example of this type of use of anatomy see ‘The Microcosm and Its Relation to the Universe’ in our *An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines*, pp. 96 ff. See also al-Ghazzālī, *Alchemy of Happiness*, trans. by H. Homes, Albany, 1873, pp. 38–39, as well as the pages devoted to the study of the body as the ‘temple’ of the spirit by Ibn ‘Arabi, al-Jili, Nasafi and others. The title of one of Ibn ‘Arabi’s famous works, *Kitāb al-tadbirāt al-ilāhiyyah fi’l-mamlakat al-insāniyyah* (*The Book of Divine Regimens Concerning the Human Dominion*), where dominion (*mamlakah*) is directly related to the symbolism of the human body, is specially significant from this point of view.
Hygiene and Public Health

Islamic medicine is more concerned with the prevention of illness than with its cure; therefore the question of hygiene and also preventive medicine plays a major part in both its theoretical and practical considerations. Westerners traveling to some of the big cities of the Islamic world where poverty and overpopulation combined with a certain degree of decadence within traditional Islamic civilization provide plenty of evidence for unhealthy conditions and unsanitary practices might protest against the assertion that cleanliness is a basic aspect of Islam. They also compare these unhealthy conditions with the machine-produced cleanliness of industrial societies, which comes from quite another order, and forget the conditions prevalent in Europe until only two centuries ago. Older Western travelers did not suffer from this optical illusion and were struck in their travels through the Islamic world with the general cleanliness of the people.
The emphasis upon personal hygiene and cleanliness in Islamic medicine is in fact a direct effect of the teachings of Islam. Ritual cleanliness requires Muslims to wash themselves regularly. The use of the toothbrush goes back to the Holy Prophet and certain strict injunctions concerning private and public hygiene are rooted directly in the teachings of the *Sharī'ah*. The same is true of dietary habits which include not only total abstention from alcoholic drinks and pork, but also fasting, eating less than one’s full appetite, eating slowly and numerous other injunctions with direct medical effects. The aspects of Islamic medicine concerning hygiene and public health include both these religious teachings and purely medical ones inherited through millennia of experience and science. The major compendium of medicine usually devoted a section to it and numerous separate treatises were written with the title *hifz al-siha* (hygiene and public health), the most famous being those of Isḥāq ibn ʿImrān, Ibn al-Jazzār, Ibn al-Muṭrān, Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī, and Ibn al-Quḥf, not to speak of the treatises of Muḥammad ibn Zakariyyāʾ al-Rāzī and Ibn Sinā bearing on this subject.

As far as hygiene is concerned, it is important to emphasize the importance of diet from the point of view of Islamic medicine. It plays a much more important role than does diet in modern medicine. The Muslims considered the kind of food and the manner in which it is consumed to be so directly connected to health that the effect of diet was considered by them as being perhaps more powerful than that even of drugs on both health and illness. It is not accidental that the Andalusian physician Abū Marwān ibn Zuhr in the 6th/12th century wrote the first scientific work on diet ever composed, the *Kitāb al-aghdhiyyah* (*The Book of Diet*), and that food plays such an important therapeutic role to this day in the Islamic world.

**Internal Medicine**

Most of Islamic medicine is concerned with internal medicine compared to which surgery plays a secondary role. Muslim physicians have always believed that health rather than illness is the natural state of the body and therefore the body possesses a natural force to bring any disequilibrium back to the state of equilibrium characterizing the state of health. Great emphasis is placed upon the ability of the body to recover and the use of all external factors such as medicaments is seen as an aid to this innate power within the body to repel whatever has caused ill health. These external factors are not seen as the direct cause of the cure of sickness.

Muslim physicians relied, of course, a great deal upon external symptoms such as the pulse and complexion and possessed remarkable powers to diagnose a disease through these factors. As far as ordinary diseases are concerned, they were especially aware of the importance of the digestive system in internal disorders and had recourse to a range of purgatives to re-establish the orderly function of the digestive organs. They also relied upon blood-letting, either to remove poisons within the body or to bring the body into harmony with new climatic conditions such as change of seasons. They were able to distinguish a large number of diseases, some of which they learned from ancient medical sources and others, like small-pox, meningitis, whooping cough, hay fever, etc., which they were the first to distinguish and describe correctly in the history of medicine. Their treatment of these and other diseases depended, of course, upon the humoral pathology and the theory of the correspondence between the natures within the humours and in external factors such as climate, food and drugs which forms the foundation of the whole of Islamic medicine.

**Ophthalmology**

A branch of medicine which received special attention in Islamic medicine was ophthalmology and throughout the Islamic world the ophthalmologist (*kahhāl*) had a distinct personality among the various classes of physicians. The Muslims inherited the whole of Greek and Alexandrian knowledge on the subject which is reflected in the earliest Arabic treatises on it such as those of Hunayn ibn Ishāq. To this was gradually added the experience and knowledge of various

---

21. As a proof of the importance of the religious element in hygiene, we must point to the central place it occupies in 'prophetic medicine' and also to the fact that 'Ali ibn Mūsa’l-Riḍā, the eighth Shi’ite Imām, wrote a treatise on health and hygiene entitled *al-Risālat al-dhahabiyyah* (*The Golden Treatise*).

Muslim ophthalmologists and oculists leading to the work of the outstanding figures of this branch of Islamic medicine such as the Christian oculist 'Ali ibn 'Isā, the author of the most famous Arabic treatise on ophthalmology, the Tadhkirat al-kahhālīn (Treasury for Ophthalmologists), and Abū Rūḥ Muḥammad al-Jurjānī entitled 'Zarrīndast' (The Golden Hand), the greatest of the Persian oculists whose Nūr al-伝n (The Light of the Eye) has served the practitioners of the art for centuries.

Ophthalmology was specially pursued in Egypt as a result probably of the prevalence of eye diseases in that land due to the dust brought by the winds from the desert. Even during the pre-Islamic period, Alexandrian physicians were particularly noted for their works on ophthalmology. But this does not mean that it was not practised on a high level elsewhere. In both the eastern lands, especially Persia, and the Maghrib there appeared also notable treatises on the subject, while 'Ali ibn 'Isā was taught everywhere and even translated into Latin as Tractus de oculis Jesu ben Hali. Many of the technical terms pertaining to ophthalmology in Latin as well as some modern European languages are of Arabic origin, and attest to the influence of Islamic sources on this subject. Eastward also the works of such men as al-Jurjānī spread into India where practices such as couching for the treatment of cataract have survived to the present day.

**Surgery**

The Muslim physicians usually disapproved of surgery where it was not considered as absolutely necessary, but nevertheless many surgical operations from the Caesarean section to complicated eye operations are described. Numerous surgical instruments especially various types of scalpels were developed, some quite elaborate and combining as elsewhere utility and beauty, and most have survived relatively unchanged over the ages with only small local variations. Most of the instruments revert back
to those described in the work which marks the peak of surgery in Islam, the Kitāb al-taṣrīf (The Book of Concession) of the Andalusian Abu’l-Qāsim al-Zahrāwī whom the West knew so well as Albucasis.

Surgery in Islam was also concerned greatly with cauterization, which was widely practised as in the mediaeval West, and which also has traditional religious sources to support its practice. Cauterization was used not only for destroying infection around a wound but also for such specific problems as haemorrhoids. It of course also played an important role in the amputation of limbs, the destruction of certain tumours, and the like.  

It is of interest to note the treatment given for broken or disjointed parts of the body which forms part of surgery today. In Islamic medicine most such cases were not operated upon but were treated by means of external pressure applied to place the dislocated parts in their original position and even to set broken bones. The mastery of practitioners of this art has been so great that to this day they are able to compete with modern physicians in many parts of the Islamic world and can treat even such difficult fractures as broken shoulders not to speak of disjointed ones. Because of the mastery and practical success of the practitioners of traditional osteology, this branch of Islamic medicine has remained one of the most living until today, even in those parts of the Islamic world where the other branches are no longer practised seriously.  

Also in conjunction with surgery it is necessary to say something about oral surgery and dentistry in general. Muslim physicians performed various operations on the mouth as well as treating the teeth themselves. In addition to providing various instructions for keeping healthy teeth, they provided regular service for patients with tooth trouble and even made false teeth from the bones of animals for some of their patients.

23. Some of the simpler forms of cauterization as well as other operations were performed in the Islamic world as in the West by barbers. This was especially true of circumcision, which is also a religious rite in Islam and is usually combined with special religious ceremonies in the family.

24. Not the least reason for the success of this class of hakims is the various effective ointments which they possess, ointments whose composition they usually keep secret. Some of these ointments have been kept within one family over the centuries.

25. It is remarkable how the quality of teeth deteriorates with the 'advance' of modern civilization, as one can observe among living members of a single family in many Islamic cities today. The more modernized their life style becomes, the more rapidly usually do their teeth and eyes deteriorate. This is not a matter of historical speculation but of actual experience and observation.
Figure 82. A selection of Islamic surgical instruments.

Figure 83. A Caesarean operation.
Plate 105. A patient with haemorrhoids being treated.

Plate 106. A dislocated shoulder being set.
Figure 84. A dislocated hip being set.
Plate 107. A dentist at work.
Medicine and the Occult Sciences

Finally in this brief treatment of the various aspects of Islamic medicine a word must be said about the relation of this medicine to such occult sciences as astrology, the ‘occult properties of objects’ (khawāṣṣ al-ashyā’), etc. This is a complicated subject treated in certain medical works and not in others. Most physicians believed in astrological correspondences and took them into consideration in their treatment of both psychological and physical ailments. Some wrote of the special influence of certain minerals or plants upon various physical forces within the body or special ailments and numerous treatises exist where tables are given to show these relations. Likewise the discussion of the medical effects of the occult properties of various minerals and plants is a part and parcel of most lapidaries and works on natural history as mentioned already. This type of treatment is of course distinct from recourse to prayer, fasting, litanies and use of certain traditional sciences connected with the ‘therapeutic’ power of various formulas of the Holy Book which is also a very common practice among all Muslim peoples today as before. Altogether the relation between medicine and all the forces which belong to the worlds above nature forms an essential aspect of Islamic medicine and no amount of criticism by modern physicians or Muslim apologists can obliterate this fact. Moreover, this aspect of Islamic medicine, if secondary accretions are shorn away from it, is an essential aspect of it, containing a knowledge of the relationship between the microcosm and other orders of reality to which modern medicine is completely alien, but which nevertheless many people are seeking to discover today through whatever means they find at their disposal.

Islamic Medicine in its Historical Development

The Historiography of Islamic Medicine

A great deal of research has been carried out over the past two centuries by Western and Muslim scholars alike to make better known the history of Islamic medicine.26 But although the task is far from finished because of the vast amount of material involved, the work of these scholars has been facilitated by the historiography of medicine within the Islamic world itself which is the most complete and developed of any traditional civilization.

Scholars working within the Islamic world, at first Christians such as Ishāq ibn Hunayn and then Muslim ones, began to write histories of medicine based on the earlier work of John the Grammarian. By the 4th/10th centuries major histories of philosophers and physicians—these being usually treated together—appeared, such as the well-known histories of Abū Sulaymān al-Manṭiqī al-Sijistānī and his student Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawhīdī in Baghdad, Ibn Ju‘jul and Qāḍī Ša‘īd al-Andalūsī in the Maghrib. These in turn served as bases for the major works of the 7th/13th century which mark the peak of writings on the history of Islamic medicine, namely the ‘Uyūn al-anbā‘ fi ṭabaqāt al-āťibbā‘ (Important Informations concerning the Generations of Physicians) of Ibn Abī Usaybi‘ah, the Ta‘rikh al-ḥukamā‘ (The History of Physicians and Philosophers) of Ibn al-Qiftī and the Wafayāt al-a‘yān (The Demise of Eminent Men) of Ibn Khallikān. These works complemented the vast amount of information on the history of medicine contained in actual medical treatises such as the Kāmil al-ṣinā‘ah (The Perfection of the Art) of al-Majūsī.

Together they have enabled the scholars to trace the general historical development of Islamic medicine while the particular features continue to be filled through the study of individual physicians and treatises.  

The Sources of Islamic Medicine

Islamic medicine came into being as a result of the integration of the vast heritage of the Graeco-Alexandrian, Near Eastern (Syriac), Persian and Indian traditions into the general perspective of Islam with the orientation and general direction provided by the Holy Quran and prophetic Ḥadīth. Muslims considered practically every Greek philosopher including Pythagoras and Plato to be a physician as well, in accordance with their own identifying of the philosopher and the physician in the single figure of the ḥakīm. But the most important Graeco-Alexandrian sources were first of all Hippocrates and Galen, and then nearly all the other Greek physicians of note such as Alexander of Tralles and Paul of Aegina, and such famous treatises as the Pandects of Ahron and works attributed to Hermes and Asclepius.  

Hippocrates, known in Arabic as Buqraṭ – which is a household name in Arabic and Persian – is already cited by Jābir ibn Ḥayyān and was recognized from the earliest period as the father of Greek medicine. Numerous works by him were rendered into Arabic from the beginning of the movement of translation. As for Galen (Jālinūs in Arabic which is also a very popular name in Islamic languages) more of his works survived in Arabic than in Greek and Muslims especially identified him as much with philosophy as with medicine since it was through him that they received the synopsis of the dialogues of Plato as well as the debates of the Alexandrian commentators of Aristotle. Islamic medicine was particularly fortunate in receiving the Hippocratic and Galenic corpus in the unmatched translation of Hunayn ibn Ḥaṣṣāq who was himself an outstanding physician. He is perhaps responsible more than any other translator for the perfection of the medical vocabulary in Arabic.  

In both quantity and quality the translations of the treatises of Galen occupy a unique position among the sources of Islamic medicine.

As far as Syriac works are concerned, the works of Sarjis of Resḥ'aynā which were taught at Jundishapur influenced Muslim authors as did a few other treatises such as the work of Yarbuqā on poisons. Jundishapur was also the locus of Persian influences upon Islamic medicine. But as far as actual texts are concerned little has survived, the most important being the introduction of Burzōe to the Kalilah wa Dimnah. As for Indian sources the most influential works translated either at Jundishapur or Baghdad were the Cānakya (the Arabic Shānāq) on poisons, the Suṣruta (the Arabic Susrud) cited by al-Ṭabarī and al-Rāzī, and the Caraka samhitā of Caraka (Saharik al-khindi). Together these works constituted the written record which along with the practical knowledge and the oral tradition were transmitted to Islamic civilization at Jundishapur, Alexandria and elsewhere, making possible the genesis of Islamic medicine in the 2nd/8th century.


29. The technical terminology of Islamic medicine, as well as other sciences, has been a subject of research for many decades in the West and was also always of interest to traditional Islamic philologists and scientists, as seen in the treatment given to such terms in many Arabic, Persian and Turkish lexicons. As far as Western works are concerned, see G. S. Colin and H. P. J. Renaud, Glossaire sur le Mansuri de Rasès, Rabat, 1941; A. Fonahm, Arabic and Latin Anatomical Terminology, Kristiania, 1922; and also the more general work of A. Siggel, Arabisch-deutsches Wortbuch der Stoffe aus den drei Naturreichen, Berlin, 1950.

30. Sezgin cites 163 Arabic works by Galen or attributed to him. See Sezgin, op. cit., pp. 78–140.

31. See M. Levey, Medieval Arabic Toxicology, the Book of Poisons of Ibn Wahshiyya and Its Relation to Early Indian and Greek Texts, Philadelphia, 1966.
Prophetic Medicine

The religious basis of Islamic medicine is to be found in a group of traditions of the Holy Prophet concerning medicine assembled in a special section by the early canonical scholars who brought together the general collections of Hadith. Gradually around this nucleus there grew a particular branch of medicine called 'prophetic medicine' (al-tibb al-nabawi or tibb al-nabi) which later accepted certain features of the Galenic system but remained always of an overwhelmingly religious character. Throughout the ages, works were composed in this field, the first, according to tradition, being the collection of the prophetic sayings pertaining to medicine assembled by 'Alī al-Ridā, the eighth Shi'ite Imām, during the caliphate of al-Ma'mūn.32 Soon this type of writing became a distinct class of its own, so that such later compilers as the Ottoman bibliographer Hājī Khalīfah in his Kashf al-gunūn (The Removal of Doubts) devoted a special section to it.

Such authors as Abū Nu'aym al-Iṣfahāni, the outstanding biographer of early Sufism, the jurisprudent and theologian Ibn al-Jawzi, the historian and traditionalist Abū 'Abdallāh al-Dhahabi, the encyclopaedist Jalāl al-Dīn al-Suyūṭī, the physician-astronomer Muḥammad ibn 'Umar Chaghmirī33 and many others wrote on 'prophetic medicine'. And interest in such works continued in the later centuries with texts appearing in Persian, Turkish and even Urdu as well as Arabic on the subject. Moreover, in Shi'ism, a class of works entitled 'the medicine of the Imāms' (tibb al-a'immah) associated particularly with the first, sixth and eighth Imāms, was collected and edited as complementary to prophetic medicine and enjoying the same wide popularity. Altogether this branch of Islamic medicine is important not only for an understanding of regulations concerning health, followed by a vast number of believers because of their prophetic origin, but also because it reveals the religious matrix in which the older schools of medicine were received by Muslims. For it was from the integration of the

Islamic Medicine from its Origins to Ibn Sinā

Nearly all traditional sources mention that the first Muslim physician was a Companion of the Holy Prophet, Hārith ibn Kaladah, who had studied at Jundishapur and had carried out a discourse with the Sassanid king Anūshravān on questions of health. He later returned to Medina where the Holy Prophet sent him many patients for treatment. His son al-Nadr is also said to have been a physician. But despite this very early contact of Islam with schools of medicine of foreign origin, during the earlier period Arab Muslims themselves did not pursue this field and nearly all of the early physicians were either Christians, Jews or Persians. It was only after the establishment of Arabic as a major medical language and the penetration of medicine and its lore into the texture of everyday life that Arab Muslims became gradually drawn to this subject.

Since Muslims had conquered both Jundishapur and Alexandria while they were both functioning as centres of medicine, especially the former being in fact at the height of its activity, competent physicians were available to them from the earliest years of the Islamic era. But the first translation of an Arabic treatise did not take place until the Umayyad period during the reign of the Caliph Marwān I when Māsārjawāy, a Jewish physician from Basra, translated the Pandects of Ahrun into Arabic.

The establishment of Islamic medicine is related, however, to the city of Baghdad and the

32. There is also a treatise in the Jābirean corpus entitled Kitāb al-tibb al-nabawi'lālā ra'y al'ah al-bayt (The Book of 'Prophetic Medicine' according to the view of the Household of the Prophet).

33. The text of al-Suyūṭī entitled simply Tibb al-nabi is perhaps the most famous of this type of literature in Islam.

It has been translated along with the Tibb al-nabi of Chaghmirī by C. Elgood, 'Tibb-ul-Nabi or Medicine of the Prophet, being a Translation of Two Works of the Same Name', Osiris, vol. 14, 1962, pp. 33–192. The text of al-Suyūṭī was also translated into French in the 13th/19th century: see A. Perron, La médecine du prophète, Paris-Algies, 1860.
forth became the most important medical centre in the world of that day. 34

During the second half of the 2nd/8th century the dominating medical figure of Baghdad was Yuḥanna ibn Masawayh, whose father had emigrated from Jundishapur and gained fame as an ophthalmologist in Baghdad. Ibn Masawayh, known in the West as Mesue Senior was the first Christian author to write independent medical works in Arabic and in fact was a prolific author. 35 He was also a translator of Greek texts and is said to have rendered into Arabic some of the manuscripts brought back by Ḥarūn al-Rashid after his battle against the Byzantines in Ancyra and Amorium. He was particularly well known as an ophthalmologist 36 but also wrote in other fields of medicine as well as in pharmacology. 37

The foremost translator and also medical figure in Baghdad after Ibn Masawayh during the early decades of the 3rd/9th century was his student Ḥunayn ibn Ishāq, an Arab Christian with great mastery of Arabic, Greek and Syriac who, as already mentioned, is more than anyone else responsible for the high quality of translation of the work of the Greek masters of medicine, especially Hippocrates and Galen, into Arabic.

It is important to note also that Ḥunayn not only translated individual texts but a whole medical curriculum, as The Alexandrian Summaries (Jawāmiʿ al-iskandārīyyīn) shows. He thus influenced directly not only the practice but also the teaching of medicine. Ḥunayn was also an accomplished physician and was the author of two basic works on ophthalmology: the Kitāb al-ʿashr maqālāt fil-ʿayn (Ten Dissertations on the Eye) which is the oldest systematic treatment of the subject containing also diagrams of the anatomy of the eye, and the Kitāb al-masaʿil fil-ʿayn (The Book of Questions Concerning the Eye). 38 He also composed other influential works on general

34. Belonging also to this period and of much importance for the theoretical aspect of medicine are the writings of Jābir on medicine. However, they have not, as yet, been seriously studied from the medical point of view. See Sezgin, op. cit., pp. 211–223.

35. Ibn Abī Uṣaybiʿah mentions 42 medical works by him.


38. Numerous scholars, especially J. Hirschberg and M. Meyerhof, have studied Ḥunayn’s ophthalmology. See especially M. Meyerhof, ‘Die Lehre von Sehen bei Ḥunain b. Ishāq’, Archiv für die Geschichte der Medizin, vol. 6, 1913, pp. 21–33; and Meyerhof, The Book of the Ten Treatises on the Eye ascribed to Ḥunain, Cairo, 1928. A group of British scholars are now making a systematic study and translation of the Galenic and Hippocratic corpus in Arabic mostly associated with Ḥunayn and his school. See the competent translations of J. N. Mattock, M. C. Lyons and others in the Arabic Technical and Scientific Texts series being published by Cambridge University.
medical themes and left an indelible mark on the history of Islamic medicine.

Ḥunayn’s contemporary in Baghdad, the philosopher al-Kindi, was also interested in medicine, and especially pharmacology, although he did not devote as much attention to the subject as did the later Peripatetics. Likewise the great astronomer of that period, Thābit ibn Qurrah, dealt to some extent in his writings with medicine and must have been an accomplished physician for in his Tadhkirah (The Treasury) which was later to become a standard text of medicine he described measles and smallpox before al-Rāzī did.

The first notable Muslim physician appeared also during the first half of the 3rd/9th century. ‘Ali ibn Rabban al-Ṭabarī, whose family was converted to Islam, hailed from northern Persia but came to Baghdad. He is responsible for the Firdaws al-hikmah (The Paradise of Wisdom) which is the first systematic Islamic work on medicine. Al-Ṭabarī made full use of Syriac and Greek sources, apparently without the aid of the translations of Hunayn, and also of Sanskrit translations. His work contains not only chapters on general cosmological principles and all the branches of medicine, but also a special section devoted to Indian medicine. It is particularly known for its extensive treatment of anatomy.

Contact with original Greek and Syriac medical sources continued during this period, as seen in such a figure as Qustā ibn Lūqā, who knew both Greek and Syriac and wrote numerous medical works, most of which have not been studied until now. But by this time the main medical heritage of the ancient world was already translated into Arabic and upon the foundation established by al-Ṭabarī on the one hand and Ḥunayn on the other, Islamic medicine began its golden age. And this occurred almost immediately with the appearance of Muḥammad ibn Zakariyyā’ al-Rāzī (Rhazes), considered by many to be the greatest of Muslim physicians, especially in the experimental and clinical aspects of medicine.

He was born in Rayy, received his earliest education in that city, turned to music and alchemy early in life and only later to medicine. He came to Baghdad, where he headed the main hospital in the city and finally returned to Rayy, where he died in 313/925. Nothing is known of his medical education and in fact so much legend has surrounded him that it is difficult to depict a distinct historical image of him. It is known that he had immense clinical experience, trained numerous students, wrote a great deal and had a mastery of many subjects from philosophy and psychology to alchemy and medicine. Although he has attracted many modern scholars with his philosophical works, it is mostly as an alchemist and physician that his name has survived in Islamic history.

The incomparable historian and scientist al-Bīrūnī was so deeply interested in the writings of al-Rāzī that he devoted years to collecting his
works and then wrote a catalogue of them in which, of the 184 works listed, 56 are devoted to medicine and allied subjects.46 Of these, the most important is the immense encyclopaedia al-Hāwi (Continens) which was so celebrated in the Latin West.46 It is based upon al-Rāzi’s own daily clinical observations and is rich from the observational and experimental point of view rather than for its contribution to theory. A shorter and also famous work is the Kitāb al-manṣūrī (The Book of Manṣūr), again well known in the West as Liber medicinalis ad Almansorem. Other famous writings of al-Rāzi include the Kitāb taqsim al-‘ilal (The Book on the Division of the Causes of Disease – known in Latin as Liber divisionum), the Kitāb al-fakhrī (The Splendid Book – Liber pretiosus) and, perhaps his most famous work in the West, the Kitāb al-jadari wa’l-haṣbah (Treatise on Smallpox and Measles, famous in Latin as Liber de pestilentia).47

The works of al-Rāzi cover nearly every aspect of medicine. The man who considered himself as the equal of Plato and Aristotle combined the medical heritage of Antiquity and his own powers of observation and deduction to discover many new maladies, propose new cures and point to new paths in the field of traditional medicine. He marks a major peak in Islamic medicine and his influence in the Islamic world and the West in nearly all branches of medicine is practically beyond measure.48 His fame throughout the past millennium is sufficient proof of his role in the history of Islamic and even Western medicine.

Al-Rāzi’s successor on the philosophic scene, Abū Naṣr al-Fārābi, was of much greater influence in the field of philosophy than al-Rāzi but not at all as much concerned with medicine. Al-Fārābi did, however, show some interest in medicine, especially in its methods and principles and its place in the hierarchy of the sciences.49 He is also purported to have practised medicine especially when he was in Aleppo and Damascus.

The most notable medical figure following al-Rāzi was another Persian, ‘Ali ibn al-‘Abbās al-Majūsī from Ahvaz, known in the West as Haly Abbas. Al-Majūsī is known particularly for his masterly compendium written in the 4th/10th century, the Kāmil al-sīnā’ah known also as Kitāb al-malikī (The Perfection of the Art or The Royal Book), famous in Latin as Liber regius. This work stands in both size and content between al-Rāzi’s al-Hāwi and the Kitāb al-manṣūrī and is known both for its clear and logical treatment of the subject and its study of the history of medicine. Al-Majūsī was the director of the famous ‘Aḍūd al-Dawlah hospital in Baghdad and the book reflects a knowledge which comes not only from book learning but also from extensive personal experience.50

The 4th/10th and 5th/11th centuries were the age of numerous medical authorities of the highest rank. While al-Majūsī was dominating the field of internal medicine in the East, Andalusia produced the first of its great medical figures, Abu’l-Qāsim al-Zahrāwī (from Madinat al-Zahrā’ of Cordova) whose name in its Latin form of Albucasis is practically as famous as in its Arabic form. Al-Zahrāwī was the greatest of Muslim


46. As the research of A. Z. Iskandar, reflected in his doctoral thesis at Oxford University, shows, there are two versions of this work. Iskandar has also revealed the great influence of this vast encyclopaedia upon Ibn Sīnā.

47. Translated as late as the 12th/18th century and published by J. Channing as Rhazes de Variolis et Morbillis, London, 1766.

48. On various aspects of Rāzi’s medicine, see O. Temkin, ‘Texts and Documents, a Medieval Translation of Rhazes’ Clinical Observations’, Bulletin of the History of Medicine, vol. 12, 1942, pp. 102–117; Meyerhof,


49. On al-Fārābi’s medical interests, see M. Plessner, ‘Al-Fārābi über Medizin, eine übersehene und seine neuentdeckte Quelle’, XXI Congress Internazionale di Storia Medicina, 1970, pp. 1533–1539. Al-Fārābi was also particularly interested in the therapeutic effects of music and wrote a treatise on the subject.

surgeons and the thirty sixth section of his Kitāb al-
Taṣrīf (The Book of Concessions) or Concessio, which
is a medical encyclopaedia, was the definitive
guide for surgeons over the centuries. It gives the
most systematic treatment of surgery in Islamic
medicine, the text being accompanied with
illustrations of the instruments used by al-
Zahrāwi. The surgical part of al-Taṣrīf, which
is the first illustrated surgical treatise, consists of
three parts: the first on cauterization advised by
prophetic tradition and suggested by al-Zahrāwi
for apoplexy; the second on operations performed
with a scalpel and also operations of the eye as well
as oral surgery; and the third on various forms of
bone fractures and dislocations, as well as on
child delivery. The work of al-Zahrāwi was also
widely disseminated in the West thanks to the
Latin translation of Gerard of Cremona and
exercised much influence upon Italian and French
surgeons and interest in it survived into the modern
period.

This was likewise the period of major
works on ophthalmology, the age of the most
famous authority in Islam, 'Ali ibn 'Isā whose
Tadhkira al-kahhālin (The Treasury of Ophthal-
mologists) occupied the same position in its field
as that of al-Zahrāwi did in surgery. He was also
the first person to propose the use of anaesthesia
for surgery. There appeared at this time another
celebrated oculist, 'Ammār al-Mawṣili (Can-
musali), who was born in Mosul but flourished in
Egypt and like 'Ali ibn 'Isā also gained fame in the
Occident. Further west in Tunis, Ishāq ibn
Sulaymān al-Isrā'īlī (Isaac Judaeus) also practised
ophthalmology in Qayrawān, and like his
contemporaries was translated into Latin and in his
case also into Hebrew. Likewise it was at this time
that Ibn al-Haytham was carrying out his impor-
tant optical studies including ophthalmology to
which reference has been made already.

The most illustrious figure of this period
and Islam’s most famous physician was Abū 'Ali
ibn Sīnā, the ‘prince of physicians’, the Avicenna
of Western Scholastics and physicians and one by
whose name many people in the East call Islamic
medicine to this day. Ibn Sīnā lived throughout
his life in Persia. Born near Bukhara he wandered
throughout his life over Persia going from one
city to another, until he died of colic in Hamadan
in 428/1037. He was self-taught in medicine and
was already a famous physician by the age of 18.
Access to the royal library of the Samanids, vast
clinical experience and an intellectual power
which has made of him the most influential and
well known of all Muslim philosopher-scientists
permitted Ibn Sīnā to systematize medicine in
such a definitive manner that his works became
dominant authorities in East and West for cen-
turies to come and are still the main reference for
the practitioners of Islamic medicine wherever
they may be.

Ibn Sīnā’s most famous medical work is
al-Qānūn fi'l-tibb (The Canon of Medicine) which
is perhaps the most influential single work in the
whole history of medicine, even including the
writings of Hippocrates and Galen. Written in
Arabic, it was translated later into Persian,
Turkish, Urdu and other Islamic languages as
well as into Hebrew, Catalan and Latin, the Latin
translation being one of the most often printed
works in the 10th/16th century. It consists of five
books as follows:

1. General principles of medicine (al-kulliyyāt in
Arabic and Colliget in Latin) which includes
the philosophy of medicine, anatomy and
physiology, hygiene and the treatment of
diseases.

2. Simple drugs.

51. See K. Sudhoff, Beiträge zur Geschichte der Chirurgie im
Mittelalter, vol. II, Leipzig, 1918, pp. 16–84; P. de
Koning, Traité sur le calcul dans les reins et dans la
vésicule, Leiden, 1896; and the recent but somewhat less-
than-perfect edition and translation of the text of al-
Zahrāwi by M. S. Spink and G. Lewis, Albucasis on
Surgery and Instruments, A Definitive Edition of the
Arabic Text with English Translation and Commentary,
London, 1973. There is an earlier French translation

52. The first modern edition goes back to the 1778 Oxford
dition of the Arabic text with a Latin translation.

53. Studied and translated by J. Hirschberg, J. Lippert and
E. Mittwoch, Die Arabischen Augenärzte nach den
Quellen bearbeitet, vol. I, Leipzig, 1904; and C. A.
Wood, Memorandum of a Tenth-Century Oculist, for the
Use of Modern Ophthalmologists, Chicago, 1936.


55. A vast number of writings have been devoted to the life
and works of Ibn Sīnā. For a synopsis and also a bib-
liography of the subject, see Nasr, An Introduction to
Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, chapter 11 and biblio-
graphy; Nasr, Three Muslim Sages, chap. 1; also S.
3. Disorders of each internal and external organ of the body.
4. Illnesses which affect the body in general and are not limited to a single organ or limb.
5. Compound drugs.

Besides making extensive use of all the medical experience and knowledge of both Islamic and non-Islamic sources available to him, Ibn Sinā also made many new observations of his own, including the discovery of meningitis, the manner of spread of epidemics, the contagious nature of tuberculosis, etc. He also made many discoveries in what is called psychosomatic medicine today. The Canon, as well as al-Hāwi and some of the other works of al-Rāzī, have in fact still much to reveal as far as their new contributions to the discovery and cure of various ailments are concerned.

Ibn Sinā also wrote numerous other works dealing with specific medical subjects, some in Arabic and others in Persian. But perhaps the most widespread of his other medical works was his al-Urjūzah fil-ṭibb (Medical Poem) in which the principles of medicine are summarized in poetic form to facilitate their being memorized by medical students. But this work does not of course compete with the Canon which has been studied and commented upon by generations of physicians in both East and West.

Islamic Medicine after Ibn Sinā

After Ibn Sinā, Islamic medicine gradually underwent a regional development while preserving its basic unity. Of course ideas still travelled the width and breadth of the Islamic world but medicine came to possess enough of a local and regional character to make it possible to discuss its history in regions without doing injustice to its nature. This is possible, however, only if the underlying unity which binds the various parts of the Islamic world during the later centuries, despite external political divisions, is kept constantly in mind. For the sake of convenience the main regions where medicine developed from the middle of the 5th/11th century onward may be summarized as Iraq, Syria, Egypt and the adjacent areas; the Maghrib; Persia and India; and the Turkish part of the Ottoman world.

Iraq, Syria, Egypt and adjacent lands

In the Eastern Arab countries Baghdad continued to produce important physicians up to the 6th/12th century although even until this date many of the most famous names belong to Christians such as Ibn Buṭlān and Ibn Tilmīdī. In Egypt, serious study of medicine began with the Fāṭimidūs, and the famous physicians al-Tamīmī and al-Balādī were personal physicians to Ibn Killīs, the Fāṭimid vizier. Also during the reign of al-Ḥākim bi’l-lāh, ‘Ali ibn Rūḍwān flourished in Cairo and from there carried out his famous correspondence and debate with Ibn Buṭlān which marks a highlight of medical controversy between two leading physicians in the Islamic world.


As for the Canon, and the other medical works of Ibn Sinā in general, the most important exposition is still that of O. Gruner already cited (note 12). There are also numerous more specialized studies dealing with specific areas such as anatomy, gynaecology, etc. See Ullmann, op. cit., p. 153.

57. There is unfortunately no complete translation of the Canon in any European language except Russian (by V. N. Ternovskii, et al.). But two translations are now being made simultaneously into English, that of M. H. Shah, which began earlier, and the one by a group of scholars under the direction of Ḥākim Muḥammad Sa’īd. See Shah, The General Principles of Avicenna’s Canon of Medicine, Karachi, 1966.

58. See J. Schacht and M. Meyerhof, The Medico-Philosophical Controversy between Ibn Buṭlān of Baghdad and Ibn Rūḍwān of Cairo, Cairo, 1937.
With the building of new hospitals in Damascus and Cairo in the 6th/12th century these cities and especially Cairo became centres of attraction for physicians from everywhere including Maimonides who journeyed all the way from Andalusia to settle in Cairo. Likewise, ‘Abd al-Laţif al-Baghdādi, the 7th/13th century polymath who also wrote on medicine and commented upon the Aphorisms of Hippocrates, left Baghdad to live in Cairo.

Medical activity in Syria and Egypt became so closely interrelated in the 6th/12th and 7th/13th centuries that ‘Abd al-Rahim al-Dakhwār became the superintendent of the medical departments of both provinces. His student Ibn ‘Abi Uṣaybi‘ah has been already cited for his contribution to the history of medicine. But his most important disciple from a purely medical point of view was ‘Alā‘ al-Dīn ibn Nafis, at once philosopher, theologian and physician, who was entitled ‘the second Ibn Sīnā’ and who worked in both Damascus and Cairo. Although Ibn al-Nafis has been celebrated throughout the Islamic world including Persia and India since his death in 687/1288, it was only in 1924 that an Egyptian doctor, Muḥyī al-Dīn al-Ṭaṭāwī discovered that centuries before Servetus and Colombo, Ibn al-Nafis had explained correctly the minor circulation of the blood. This was one of the most important discoveries in the history of medicine and made the name of Ibn al-Nafis celebrated in the West as the real predecessor of William Harvey rather than Servetus and Colombo who had been credited until then with the discovery of the minor circulation. Although the line of transmission is not clear, Servetus, Colombo and other Western writers may in fact have come to know of Ibn al-Nafis’s views through the translations of Andrea Alpago.

Ibn al-Nafis wrote a major compendium entitled al-Shāmil fi‘l-ṣinā‘at al-ṭibbiyyah (The Comprehensive Work on the Art of Medicine) which included a treatment of surgery, and which seems to have remained incomplete. He also wrote

59. For his most famous theological work see Meyerhof and Schacht, The Theologus Autodidactus of Ibn al-Nafis, Oxford, 1968.

commentaries upon Hippocrates and Ibn Sinā. As far as Ibn Sinā is concerned, Ibn al-Nafis wrote the Kitāb mujīz al-qāmūn (The Summary of the Canon) which became a very popular introduction to Ibn Sinā and which was translated into Turkish and Hebrew. In this commentary he follows Ibn Sinā's views without proposing any new ideas on anatomy and physiology. He also wrote the Sharḥ tashriḥ al-qāmūn (Commentary upon the Anatomy of the Canon) and Sharḥ al-qāmūn (Commentary upon the Canon), and it is in these two works that he describes for the first time the minor circulation of the blood. He also wrote a work on ophthalmology which has not as yet been studied.

After Ibn al-Nafis his student Ibn al-Quff gained fame as a surgeon and wrote the Kitāb al-'umdah fī šinā'īt al-jirāḥah (The Basic Work concerning the Art of Surgery) in twenty articles. He is also the first person to have pointed out clearly the existence of capillaries which were seen under a microscope for the first time by Malpighi in 1661. At the same time Shams al-Dīn al-Akāfānī was also flourishing in Egypt. He is responsible for a novel work on first aid entitled Kitāb ghunyat al-labīb ‘ind ghaybat al-ṭabīb (The Refuge of the Intelligent during the Absence of the Physician). He also wrote on ophthalmology. But by now the main centres of activity in the field of medicine had moved east and north and it is mostly in the Turkish part of the Ottoman empire along with Persia and India where the most important scenes of the final chapter of the history of Islamic medicine were enacted.

The Maghrib

As far as the Maghrib is concerned, the high level of medical practice and science established in Cordova by the 4th/10th century continued for the next few hundred years. In the 5th/11th and 6th/12th centuries the Ibn Zuhr (Avicenna) family established itself as a leading medical family and the most famous among its members, Abū Marwān ibn Zuhr, composed the Kitāb al-taysīr fīl-mudāwāt wa'l-tadbīr (The Book Facilitating the Study of Therapy and Diet) which is among the most celebrated products of Islamic medicine in Andalusia and which was translated into both Hebrew and Latin. Another of his well-known works is the Kitāb al-aqhdhiyāh (The Book of Diet) which again is among the best of its kind dealing with a subject which is so much emphasized in Islamic medicine.

In the 6th/12th century there appeared in Spain a group of men who were at once eminent philosophers and physicians. Ibn Ṭufayl, the author of the well-known Ḥayy ibn Yaqzān (Living Son of the Awake), was a practising physician, and Ibn Rushd (Averroës), the most celebrated Islamic philosopher of Andalusia, also practised medicine and wrote commentaries upon Galen. He also composed an independent work on medicine, the Kitāb al-kulliyāt (The Book of General Principles – Colliget in Latin) which became famous in the West along with his philosophical works.

The Jewish physician and philosopher Abū ‘Imrān Mūsā ibn Maymūn (Maimonides) was a student of both Ibn Rushd and Ibn Ṭufayl and like them accomplished in both philosophy and medicine. In fact he was such a competent practitioner of the healing art that after emigrating to Egypt he became physician to Salāḥ al-Dīn al-Ayyūbī (Saladin) and his family. Maimonides is the author of, among other medical works, the Kitāb al-fusūl (The Book of Aphorisms) as well as a work on hygiene dedicated to Āfdal Nūr al-Dīn ‘Ali, the oldest son of Salāḥ al-Dīn, and entitled Kitāb tadbīr al-ṣīḥāh (The Regimen of Health). Like Ibn Rushd, Maimonides also wrote commentaries upon Galen.

After these celebrated figures, medicine gradually declined in Andalusia but survived in Morocco where it continues in certain quarters to this day. But perhaps the most outstanding contribution of the Maghrib to Islamic medicine was in the field of pharmacology to which we shall turn shortly.

61. Some people think that Ibn al-Nafis's discovery was completely ignored by later Muslim writers. Such, however, is not the case. Although some later anatomists ignored it and reverted back to the Galenic and Avicennian conceptions, others, like Sadid al-Din al-Kāzirīnī and 'Ali ibn 'Abdallāh al-Maṣrī, both in the 8th/14th century, were aware of it. See Iskandar, op. cit.

62. See M. Alonso Alonso, 'Averroes observador de la


Persia and India

The later medical history of Persia and India, even more than that of other regions, is dominated by Ibn Sinā. A century after him, his virulent critic in the field of philosophy, the Ash'arite theologian, Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī, commented upon the Canon and explained many of its difficulties. Al-Rāzī, who was probably the most learned of the theologians (mutakallimūn) in the domain of the 'intellectual sciences', devoted a section to medicine in his scientific encyclopaedia, Kitāb al-sittīni (The Book of Sixty Sciences), and also began a large independent work on medicine entitled al-Ṭibb al-kabīr (The Great Medicine) which was apparently never completed. He also wrote a Persian treatise on hygiene, the Kitāb ḥifẓ al-badan (Treatise on Preserving Bodily Health).64

Likewise, in the 6th/12th century, there appeared the first extensive medical encyclopaedia in Persian modelled upon the Canon, the Dhakhira-yi khwārazmshāhī (Treasury dedicated to the King of Khwārazm) by Sayyid Zayn al-Dīn Ismā'īl al-Ḥusaynī al-Jurjānī.65 The work is without doubt the most important of its kind in the Persian language and second in influence only to the Canon in the Persian and Indian worlds. Besides its significance for technical medical terminology in Persian, it is one of the most systematic treatments of Avicennan medicine including pharmacology. Al-Jurjānī also wrote other well-known medical works such as the Yādīgār-i tībb (Medical Memoranda) and Aghrād al-tībb (The Aims of Medicine). Altogether, he is perhaps responsible more than any other figure for the perpetuation of the medical teachings of the early masters and especially Ibn Sinā during the later centuries wherever Persian has been spoken.

After the Mongol invasion, despite the destruction of many centres of learning, medicine continued to be studied and taught. Qūṭ al-Dīn al-Shirāzī, already noted for his major contributions to astronomy and physics, spent a lifetime in studying earlier commentaries upon the Canon and travelled as far away as Cairo to see manuscripts of such works before writing his own al-Tuhfat al-sa'diyyah (The Present to Sa'd) which many consider to be the most thorough and profound commentary upon the Canon.66 Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad al-Samarqandi composed at the same time the Kitāb al-ṣarbā wa'l-ʿalāmāt (The Book of Causes and Symptoms) in which he discussed various diseases according to their causes and symptoms and proposed cures for each. He also wrote a treatise describing arthritis and its treatment. Major efforts to revive medical learning were also carried out at this time by Rashid al-Dīn Faḍlallāh, the powerful but ill-fated vizier and physician of the Il-Khānids, who created a major university centre near Tabriz (the Rab'i rashidi) with special emphasis upon medicine, encouraged the writing of works on medicine by offering outstanding prizes to the best works and himself composed a medical encyclopaedia and even caused to be written the only known work on Chinese medicine in Islam, the Persian treatise Tansūkhnāma-yi Ilkhānī dar 'ulūm wa funūn-i khata'i (The Il-Khānid Compendium Concerning the Sciences and the Arts of the Chinese) which is yet one more example of the great cultural and scientific exchange between Islam and China following the Mongol invasion.67

64. Despite recent interest in this altogether neglected figure, most works composed concerning him during the past few years have involved his theology while his medical writings have been nearly completely neglected. On Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī in general, see Nasr, 'Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī', in A History of Muslim Philosophy, vol. I, pp. 642–656.

65. The Persian text of this large compendium is being edited in Tehran in two different versions, the first by I. Afsār and M. Danechepazhuh and the second by J. Mostafāvī. The first is a more critical edition from the literary point of view, while the second is, perhaps, of greater medical interest, being edited by a scholar who is himself a physician well acquainted with both traditional and modern medicine. For a study of this work, see A. Naficy, Les Fondements théoriques de la médecine persane, d'après l'encyclopédie médicale de Gorgani, avec un aperçu sommaire sur l'histoire de la médecine en Perse, Paris, 1933.


67. On Rashid al-Dīn, who was also the author of the first world history Jāmi' al-tawāriḵ, see the numerous works of J. A. Boyle and K. Jahn, as well as the Cambridge History of Iran, vol. 5, where his cultural significance is mentioned in many chapters. As for his work concerning Chinese medicine, see A. Adnan, 'Sur le Tansukh-nāma-i Ilkhānī, de l'Umūr-ū-Funun-i-Khatā', Isis, vol. 32, 1940, pp. 44–47; and A. Suhely Unver and A. B. Golpinarli, Tansūkhnāmet Ilkhānī dar funūnū umūmu Hātāi muqaddimés (Université d'Istanbul, T.T.F. n. 14), Istanbul, 1939. The edition of the Persian text has been made by M. Minovi as Ṭibb-i ahl-i Khatā, Tehran, 1350 (A.H. solar).
During the Il-Khānid and Timurid periods, other medical authors continued to appear in Persian. Najm al-Dīn Maḥmūd al-Shirāzī produced his al-Ḥāwī al-ṣaghīr (The Small Ḥāwī) following the model of al-Rāzī in the 8th/14th century. During the following centuries, medical education in Persia and Turkey developed close ties so that a person such as Ghīyāth al-Dīn Muḥammad al-Īṣfahānī studied in both lands. He wrote his Mīrāṯ al-ṣiḥḥah (The Mirror of Health) in Persian but dedicated it to the Ottoman sultan.

There was a revival of medical activity in the Safavid period with the re-establishment of political order and the encouragement to establish schools and dispensaries. The foremost medical figure of the whole age, who lived in fact mostly before the Safavid period but survived into the reign of Shāh Ḩosain, was Muḥammad Ḥusaynī Nūr巴khsh, known usually by his title of Bahā’ al-Dawlah. He is the author of the Khulāṣat al-tajārī (The Quintessence of Experience) based on the style of al-Rāzī’s al-Ḥāwī. Bahā’ al-Dawlah was himself an acute clinical observer and is credited with the first clear description of whooping cough and hay fever. Among other notable Safavid physicians may be mentioned Ḥakīm Muḥammad (11th/17th century), earlier an officer in the Ottoman army who wrote the Dhakhira-yi kāmilah (The Perfect Treasury), which is the only Safavid work devoted solely to surgery. It is also necessary to mention the Dastūr al-ʿilāj (Rules of Treatment) of Sūltān ‘Ali Gunādī, the Risālah dar tīrīyāq (Treatise on Theriaca) of Kamāl al-Dīn Ḥusaynī who hailed from Mahān and the famous and still popular 11th/17th century work, the Tuḥfat al-muʿminīn of Mir Muḥammad Zamān and his son which is concerned with pharmacy as well as medicine. As far as the spread of syphilis into Persia at this time is concerned, it is important to note the treatise of ‘Imād al-Dīn on the disease, which the Persians called ‘Frankish fire’ (atishak-i farangi). The disease was first observed by Bahā’ al-Dawlah, but the treatise of ‘Imād al-Dīn is the first to deal with it thoroughly. His authority in medicine was, in fact, so great that his treatise continued to be used in Persia and India until modern times.

From the reign of Nādīr Shāh onward, modern European medicine was introduced into Persia and the process became more accelerated during the Qajar period with the establishment of a new university (Dār al-funūn) in Tehran where modern medicine was taught. But in Persia, as in Egypt, Turkey and other lands of Western Islam, the traditional system has continued, although receding continuously before the spread of Western medicine, and survives today mostly in such particular branches as bone setting, pharmacology and the like.

As far as India is concerned, the history of Islamic medicine in that land is hardly separable from that of Persia because of the flow of a large number of Persian physicians, especially from Shiraz and Isfahan, to India from the 9th/15th to the 12th/18th century, as well as the common use of Persian as the primary scientific language, especially in medicine, in the two regions. There had been a gradual spread of the Islamic sciences including medicine into India from the 7th/13th century and even earlier in certain areas, such as the Punjab and Sindh, but the establishment of Islamic medicine on a large scale coincides with both the emigration of Persian physicians competent in this form of medicine, the availability of medical texts in Persian and, to a certain extent, the translations of medical works from Sanskrit into Persian, such as Tīb-i sikandari (The Medicine of Sikandar) dedicated to Sikandar Shāh Lodi of Delhi. It was also at this time that Mansūr ibn Faqīh Ilyās wrote the already mentioned famous anatomical treatise in Persian, the Tashrīḥ-i mansūri (The Anatomy of Mansūr), dedicated to the Muslim prince Pir Muḥammad Bahādur Khān.

During the Mogul period, especially from the time of Akbar onwards, the migration of notable Persian medical figures into India increased for a complex set of reasons of which the most important was the remarkable opportunities,


both economic and political, that existed for such figures in India. Some of the most famous among these figures are 'Ayn al-Mulk, Amir Fath al-Din, Hakim Sadra and Fatallah Gilihi who dominated the medical scene at Delhi and elsewhere within the Mogul empire. But the greatest of the Persian physicians at the Mogul court was probably Nur al-Din Muhammed Shirazi, author of the immense Tibb-i Dara Shukoh (The Medicine of Dara Shukoh), whose manuscripts are usually richly illustrated. Even in the 12th/18th century there were famous physicians who migrated from Persia to India, such as Muhammed Hasmir Shirazi known as Alawi Khan who accompanied Nadir Shah back from India to Persia, but returned at the end of his life to die in India.

There were, of course, also eminent teachers and physicians of completely Indian background, such as Mir Haji Muhammed Muqim of Bengal and especially his son Muhammed Akbar Arzahi, who was the author of Tibb-i akbar (The Great Work on Medicine), as well as a commentary upon the Qaniunchah (The Small Canon) of Chaghmini. But it was especially after the 12th/18th century that Muslim and even Hindu physicians from India itself came to the fore to continue the cultivation of Islamic medicine and to add a new chapter to its history. During the 13th/19th century, works on medicine began to be translated into or written in Urdu along with Persian, and to this day, Islamic medicine has been kept alive as a living tradition in India as well as Pakistan and Bangladesh. In fact, it is in these regions that Islamic medicine is most alive today.

**The Ottoman World**

Medical activity in the Turkish part of the Ottoman world was closely related to that of Persia until the 9th/15th century, after which it developed its own distinct features, although works continued to be written mostly in Arabic and Persian and the classical texts were taught throughout the many hospitals and schools established by the Ottoman sultans. In the 9th/15th century, there appeared the first important Ottoman physician, Haji Bashi Khidir al-Ayedini who lived, however, in Cairo. He wrote the Kitab shifa' al-asqam wa dawaa al-alam (The Book of the Cure of Sicknesses and Remedy of Pains) with a summary which has been attributed by mistake to Ibn Sin.

Another famous Turkish physician, Muhammed al-Qa'wishi, was physician to Sultan Sulayman I and Selim II and wrote a treatise on haemorrhoids, the Kitab zaid al-masir fi ilaj al-bawasir (The Book of the Provision of the Way on the Cure of Haemorrhoids). The 10th/16th century also was witness to the activities of one of the foremost of the later figures in Islamic science, Daud al-Anaki, originally from Antioch, who knew Greek and lived mostly in Damascus and Cairo. His Tadhkirah ulu'l-albaw wa'l-jami' li'l-ajab al-ujab (The Treasury of the People of Understanding and Compendium of the Wonder of Wonders) deals with medicine and pharmacology and is among the most important of later Islamic medical works.

From the 11th/17th century onward the influence of European medicine began to make itself felt in Turkish sources. This is seen for the first time in the Ghayat al-itzan fi tadbir badan al-insan (The End of Perfection concerning the Regimen of the Body of Man) by Sahib ibn Sallum, physician of Sulthan Mehmet IV. The fourth part of this work is entitled 'al-Tibb al-jadid al-kimiya'i alladhi ikhtara'ah Barakalsus (The New

---


71. In general, the history of Islamic science in India has been sadly neglected until now. This is especially unfortunate in the case of medicine and pharmacology because of the vast amount of activity that has been carried out in that region in this field during the past five centuries.

72. On the history of medicine in Ottoman Turkey, see A. Suheyli Unver, Unummi Tib Tarih: Bası Resimler ve Vesikalr (Allgemeine Geschichte der Medizin; einiger Bilder und Dokumente) (Turkish and German), Istanbul, 1943; also his 'The Origins of the History of Turkish Medicine', Hamdard Medical Digest, vol. 3, nos. 1-2, 1959, pp. 121-138.
Alchemical Medicine which was Invented by Paracelsus) where the European medicine of the Renaissance is described based mostly on Paracelsus who is called 'the chief of masters of this art' (ra'is arbāb hādhihi'l-šina'ah). The influence of Paracelsus was further spread by Hasan Efendi and 'Ali Efendi within the Ottoman world, and this marked the beginning of the influence of Western medicine which, after a lull during the 12th/13th century, increased to full force in the 13th/14th century, leading to the nearly total replacement of traditional medicine by the modern European system, a system that had, by now, moved completely away from the traditional principles still found in Paracelsus.

Pharmacology

Theory and Sources

The sources of pharmacology, concerning both simple and compound drugs, are hardly separable from those of medicine and, as seen already, many medical works contain sections devoted to drugs. The theory underlying pharmacology is also inseparable from that of medicine. Each drug possesses natures with various degrees of intensity and is prescribed for a particular malady in the light of the type of nature and the degree of intensity of that nature needed to re-establish the equilibrium of the humours. The use of drugs is, therefore, related both to the nature of the drug in question and the temperament of the patient. Moreover, the administration of drugs is based on long experience and observation. Islamic pharmacology is the depository of the experience and observation of countless generations of human beings extending over aeons of prehistory. It seems even from the empirical point of view absurd that such a wealth of knowledge acquired through experience and observation should be so easily discarded by many, even when there is a clear choice, in favour of drugs the ill-effects of many of which have not even been tested and which are often forced upon the public without a close study of their long-term consequences for the human body as a whole.

Putting aside the question of the theory of the natures and humours and degrees of intensity of the natures included in the properties of each drug, all of which are closely related to the Galenic medical theories, the actual knowledge of medicaments inherited by Muslims from earlier sources is much more dependent upon Persian and Indian sources than is the case in other branches of medicine. The Sassanids already possessed an extensive knowledge of various drugs, especially herbs, and there are even Pahlavi pharmacological terms in Greek. Likewise, Indian medicine had had access to a very rich world of herbs as well as minerals used for medicaments very different from that of the Greeks. Indian medicine made special use of various poisons and perfumes as drugs in addition to the usual herbal and mineral substances. Islamic pharmacology was heir to this rich ancient Persian and Indian tradition as well as to the tradition of the Graeco-Alexandrian school. Throughout its phases of later development also the Islamic pharmacopoeias continued to list many drugs such as camphor and tamarind not seen in the Greek sources, if for no other reason than that Muslims had access to other sources and also lived in regions whose flora and fauna were not known to the classical Greek sources.

Nevertheless, the most important source for Islamic pharmacology is without doubt Dioscorides, whose manuscripts in Arabic, like the Greek, were among the first to be illustrated. His Materia Medica was translated into Arabic in the 3rd/9th century by Išṭafān ibn Bāsil and Ḥunayn ibn Isḥāq under the title of Kitāb


74. Of course, pharmacology is also closely related to botany since most of the drugs used in Islamic medicine are of a herbal nature. It is also related to alchemy in many ways, and, as far as the use of animal derivatives as medicaments is concerned, even to zoology.

75. The pre-Islamic Arabs also made use of poisons in the treatment of illnesses, but the importance of both poisons and perfumes in Islamic medicine is related in some cases to the famous Kitāb al-shānāq – and in the case of perfumes also to a certain extent to the Arab nation. See Ullmann, Die Medizin im Islam, pp. 313–342; also Wiedemann, ‘Über Parfüms und Drogen bei den Arabern’, Aufsätze . . . , vol. II, pp. 415–430.
Plate 110. Dioscorides handing over the fabulous mandragora to one of his disciples.
al-ḥashā'ish fi hayālāl-tībb and rapidly became the main reference for pharmacologists. Its influence is already to be seen in the Fīrduwās al-
ḥikmah of al-Ṭabarī and is quoted in al-Ḩāwī. It was translated into Persian as early as the 4th/10th century by Ḥusayn ibn Ibrāhīm al-Nāṭīlī and translated again into Arabic by Mīhrān ibn Maṣūr al-Maṣīḥī in the 6th/12th century. Besides the dominating influence of Dioscorides, the pharmacological treatises of Galen, Paul of Aegina and other Graeco-Alexandrian authors were also known to Muslims and translated into Arabic along with Sanskrit and Pahlavi texts, thus setting up the background for the rise of Islamic pharmacology as an independent school.

**Pharmacognosy**

Islamic sources always distinguish between simples and compounds, the mufradāt and marakkabāt of the classical Islamic sources, the first dealing with drugs in their natural and simple state, or pharmacognosy in contemporary terms, and the second with drugs as they are usually understood today, and which were, in most cases, discussed under the heading of agrābādīn. In the light of this traditional division, these two parts of pharmacology will be also treated here separately, starting with pharmacognosy. The first Arabic work on pharmacognosy actually preceded the translation of Dioscorides, for already in the 2nd/8th century Māṣarjīs had written the Kitāb qawāl-‘aqaqīr wa ṣa manāfī’īhā wa maḏārīhā (Treatise on the Power of Drugs, their Benefits and Ill-Effects) followed early in the 3rd/9th century by Ḥusayn ibn Sīḥar-bakht, a student of Jurjīs ibn Bukhtīshū’, who wrote the Kitāb qawāl-‘adwiyat al-mufradah (The Book of the Powers of Simple Drugs). A treatise by the title of Kitāb al-adwiyat al-mufradah (The Book of Simple Drugs) exists in the Jábirean corpus and a work of the same title by Ḥunayn ibn Ishāq includes a set of questions and answers on simples. Moreover, general medical and agricultural works which appeared during the 3rd/9th century, such as the writings of Ibn Waḥshiyyah, al-Ṭabarī and al-Rāzī include extensive sections on drugs. The al-Ḩāwī mentions 829 drugs and their properties arranged alphabetically, while al-Rāzī also wrote other independent works on this subject.

The first treatise in the Persian language on medicaments, noted for its philological rather than medical importance, is the Kitāb al-abniyah ‘an ṭaqā’iq al-adwiyah (The Book of the Fundamentals of the Properties of Remedies) of Abū Maṣūr Muwaffaq written in the 4th/10th century. It marks the beginning of a long tradition of pharmacological works in Persian which has spanned a millennium to the present day. During the 4th/10th century, also, important works continued to be composed in Arabic, including the first treatises on the subject to appear in Spain, the Kitāb al-jāmī’ bi aqūlā al-qudamā’ wa’l-muḥaddithin min al-āthābā wa’l-muṭafaṣafin fi’l-adwiyat al-mufradah (The Comprehensive Book on the Views of the Ancients and the Moderns among Physicians and Philosophers concerning Simple Drugs) by Abū Bakr ibn Samghūn of Cordova in which drugs are alphabetically arranged, and the commentary of Ibn Juljul upon Dioscorides as well as his treatise on those drugs which are not mentioned by Dioscorides. Al-Zahrāwī also devoted a good part of his al-Taṣrif to plants and drugs.

As for the East, during this same period there appeared the well-known work of the Palestinian Abū ‘Abdallāh al-Tamīmi, the Kitāb al-murshid fi jamāḥir al-aqūdhiyāh wa qawāl-‘adwiyat al-mufradat min al-adwiyah (The Book of Guidance on the Precious Substances of Diet and the Powers of Simple Drugs), important both for diet and pharmacology, and the Kitāb al-‘timād fi’l-

---


adwiyat al-mufradah (The Book of Confidence concerning Simple Drugs) in which Syriac, Persian and Arabic equivalents are given for drug names and where emphasis is placed upon the ‘occult’ properties of drugs. This work was translated by Stephanus of Saragossa into Latin and was influential in the West. There were also, of course, at this time the major medical compendia, especially those of al-Majūsī and Ibn Sinā with sections concerning drugs. As already mentioned, the second book of the Canon is devoted to a detailed discussion of simples, and the powers and qualities of drugs are listed in charts.78

Perhaps the most valuable Islamic work on pharmacology is again, as in so many other fields, written by al-Birūnī, in this case his Kitāb al-saydalāh (The Book of Drugs), which he wrote in Arabic and which was translated into Persian by Abū Bakr al-Kāshānī. This work, which is a fruit of the last years of al-Birūnī’s life, is a vast compilation of pharmacological knowledge concerning 850 drugs drawn from every conceivable source with names of drugs given in several languages including Greek, Syriac, Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian and occasionally Khvārazmian, Soghdian and the like. It has always been a veritable challenge to scholars and perhaps for this reason neither the Arabic nor the Persian text has been, as yet, printed in a critical edition.79

Al-Birūnī set the model for later works of pharmacology. A century later Ibn Jazlah was to compose a similar work arranged alphabetically, but not as extensive as that of al-Birūnī. Meanwhile, the centre of activity in this field shifted to the Maghrib, which has produced some of the greatest Islamic pharmacologists. In the 6th/12th century, the Jewish druggist Yūsuf ibn Ishāq ibn Bīklārīsh from Almeria wrote the Kitāb al-mustaʿinni (The Book of Seeking Assistance), which contains a theoretical discussion of pharmacology as well as synonyms of names for plants in Arabic, Persian, Greek, Syriac, Latin and Spanish.80

Nearly at the same time, Abūl-Šalt and Ibrāhīm al-Maghribī al-ʿAlāʾi, again from the Maghrib, wrote on simple drugs. Also the celebrated Andalusian philosopher Ibn Bājja (Avempace) wrote in collaboration with Abūl-Ḥasan al-Andalūsī the Kitāb al-tajribatayn ‘alā adwiyat ibn Wāfīd, (The Book of the Two Experiences concerning the Drugs of Ibn Wāfīd) which is itself lost, but which is known through citations by Ibn al-Baytār.

The 6th/12th century also witnessed the appearance of the Kitāb al-adwiyat al-mufradah (The Book of Simple Drugs) of Abū Jaʿfar al-Ghāfīqī, which is exceptional for its accurate descriptions and richness of information and is considered by many as the most notable Islamic work on simples, especially as far as herbs are concerned.81 This work exercised a deep influence upon the works of Ibn al-Baytār, the foremost of Islamic botanists, and at the same time the great systematizer of pharmacological knowledge. Diyaḍ al-Dīn ibn al-Baytār was born in Malaga and spent his early life in Andalusia, but, like so many of his compatriots of that day, set out for the East and finally settled in Damascus where he died in 646/1248. Besides writing a commentary upon Dioscorides, Ibn al-Baytār composed the Kitāb al-mughni fil-adwiyat al-mufradah (The Independent Treatise concerning Simple Drugs) which lists some 1,400 drugs of

78. This part of the Canon was translated and commented upon separately by Vopisco Fortunato Plemio in the 11th/12th century.


80. Several studies have been devoted to him by H. P. J. Renaud, including, ‘Trois études d’histoire de la médecine arabe en Occident’, Hespèris, vol. 10, 1930–1931, pp. 135–150.

animal, plant and mineral origin. The work marks a summit in its own field and is the most influential Islamic work on the subject, both within and outside the Islamic world, its influence having even reached Armenia. Like so many other works in the field, it is a basic work on botany as well and also pertains directly to the question of diet.

From the 7th/13th century onward, works on pharmacology continued to appear in both the Ottoman and the Persian-Indian worlds based mostly on the earlier masters. As far as the Ottoman world is concerned, in the 8th/14th century Ibn Jazlah was translated into Turkish. In the 9th/15th century, Abu’l-‘Abbās al-Ḥasanī (known as Sharīf al-Ṣaqilli) from Tunis wrote the Kitāb al-āṭibba’ (The Book of Physicians) which is concerned with drugs, followed by al-Qāsim al-Ghassānī, the Moroccan pharmacologist, and the author of the Ḥadīqat al-azhār fi sharḥ māḥiyyat al-ʿushb wa‘l-ʿaqār (The Garden of Flowers on the Commentary upon the Essence of Plants and Drugs). As already mentioned, the Tadhkirah of Dā‘ūd al-Antākī contained a major section on drugs. In the 11th/17th century Madyan al-Qaṣṣīnī continued this tradition by composing the Qānim al-āṭibba’ wa nāmūs al-ḥibba’ (The Canon of Physicians and Laws of Friends) while in the 12th/18th century ‘Abd al-Razzāq al-Jazāʾirī again from the Maghrib wrote the Kitāb kashf al-rumūz (The Book of the Unveiling of Symbols) basing himself mostly on Ibn Sinā, Ibn al-Bayṭār and Dā‘ūd al-Antākī. The practice of traditional pharmacology, moreover, has continued, especially in Egypt and North Africa, to this day, despite the spread of modern medicaments into this whole region since the last century.

As for Persia and India, most of the figures already cited in conjunction with medicine

were also concerned with pharmacology. Ghiyāth al-Dīn Shirāzī’s Kitāb al-shāmil includes major sections on drugs. The medical works of the Safavid period, which has been called ‘The Golden Age of Pharmacology’ by Elgood, also abound in studies of drugs. The Tibb-i shāfī’i (The Shafī’i Medicine) of Muẓaffar al-Ḥusaynī and the Tuḥfat al-muʿīninīn written in Persia and the al-Ǧafrī al-adwiyyah of ‘Ayn al-Mulk composed in India are outstanding examples of pharmacological studies of this period contained in works which include medicine in general. It is of interest to mention also here the treatise written by Abu’l-Fatḥ Gilānī, another Persian emigrant to India in the 10th/16th century, on the qalyān, or waterpipe, and the new drug which had just invaded the East, namely tobacco. This treatise is of interest in that it is the origin of the various forms of the waterpipe used today throughout the Islamic world. In Persia and especially India, pharmacology and its related fields have continued in use, to this day more strongly than any other field of traditional medicine and many of the works here mentioned continue to serve both professional druggists and those experienced individuals who administer some of the simpler medicaments themselves for their family and friends.

The Compound Drugs

As far as compound drugs are concerned, they were usually treated in Islamic sources in the catalogue or listing of drugs which came to be known in Islamic languages as agrābāḏīn (from the Greek γραφίδιον meaning ‘list’ of drugs or a pharmacopoeia). In this field the influence of Galen was particularly strong. In the 3rd/9th century two agrābāḏīns appeared, one by Sābir ibn Sahl of Jundishapur and the other by the philosopher al-Kindī. Likewise, al-Rāzī pro-

al-ṣafiyyah fi’l-adwiyyat al-shāfiyyah (The Book of Sufficient Light on Curing Drugs) based on the Canon of Ibn Sinā. Both a written and a popular tradition on this subject have continued in the Yemen ever since but have been ignored until now and need to be fully studied.

84. This work is the primary source of Fr. Angelus’s Pharmacopoeia Persica, written in the 11th/17th century, which is the first Western study of Persian pharmacology. The Gasophylacium Persarum of Angelus is also based on the Tibb-i shāfī’i.

85. See M. Levey, The Medical Formulary or Agrābāḏīn of al-Kindī.
duced a greater and a lesser Aqrābādhin, both translated by Gerard of Cremona into Latin. There is also a Latin work on this subject attributed to Johannes Mesue, who is not Yuhanna ibn Māsawayh but may be Māsawayh al-Māridīnī who wrote on drugs at that time.

The Canon is as important for its aqrābādhin as it is for its simples and its fifth book has served as reference for questions pertaining to compounds to this day. But in compounds, as in simples, the works of Ibn Sinā and al-Rāzī were not the end but rather served as models for later works, such as the 6th/12th century treatises of Ibn al-Tilmidh, of Muḥammad ibn Bahrām al-Qalānīsi – the most comprehensive work of its kind incorporating all the earlier sources – two important pharmacopoeias by Najīb al-Dīn al-Samarqandi, and the Kitāb minhaj al-dukkān (The Open Road to the Store) which is nearly as comprehensive as the Aqrābādhin of al-Qalānīsi. Later works such as the Tibb-i shāfi‘i which is also called Qarābādin-i shāfi‘i (The Shāfi‘i Pharmacopoeia), the Tuhfat al-mu‘minin and the Qarābādin-i gādiri (The Qādiri Pharmacopoeia) of Muḥammad Akbar Arzānī, the first two written in Persia and the second in India, are also important works on the subject and bring the study of the subject down to the period of the spread of Western medicine and pharmacology in the Islamic world.

Islamic Medicine Today

The brief survey of Islamic medicine presented here conveys to some degree the extent to which Islamic medicine is related to the traditional pattern of life of the Muslim peoples (and even religious minorities living among them). It also shows the long tradition of the study of medicine in the Islamic world and the remarkably wide basis upon which this medical tradition is established, a foundation which includes practically the whole medical knowledge of the civilizations preceding Islam, excluding those of the Far East. Finally, the continuous weakening of traditional medicine before the onslaught of the spread of modern Western medicine in the last two centuries is seen in most parts of the Islamic world. As a result, today, except for the subcontinent of India where traditional Islamic medicine and pharmacology continue on an intellectual level as well as on a popular one, in the heartland of the Islamic world where most of this medicine was cultivated and taught during the classical period – in such lands as Persia, Iraq, Syria and Egypt – only a few branches such as pharmacology and certain dietary habits continue, while the medical schools have become completely dominated by Western medicine and these countries converted into a market for the sale of Western-produced or, at least, Western-originated pharmaceuticals.

Strangely enough, just when the victory of


87. These are the al-Qarābādin ‘alā tartīb al-‘ilal (The Medical Formulary according to the Order of Illnesses) and the Kitāb uṣūl tarkīb al-adwiyah translated by M. Levey and N. al-Khaledy and already cited (note 39).
Western medicine seemed complete, rumours began in the Western world itself about the shortcomings of Western medicine and especially pharmacology. Despite their remarkable successes, practitioners of this medicine still cannot cure either a simple headache or a rheumatic pain better than did the masters of old. Certain reputable Western physicians began to search for other systems. Acupuncture spread rapidly, in certain circles as did schools related to the Hippocratic-Galenic tradition. New interest is being shown in the use of herbs as medicaments. As a result, a greater degree of attention is being paid to Islamic medicine, combined with even more serious attacks upon the practice of Western medicine, leading to such recent 'iconoclastic' works as that of Ivan Illich.  

This situation in the West, the source of all

the 'officially' accepted medicine in most Islamic countries, has now become combined with a new socio-economic problem. The process of modernization has caused many Muslim governments to seek to provide medical coverage for all their citizens, but both the rapid rise of population and the exorbitant cost of training physicians in the Western type of medical school, even if these graduates were not to wind up ultimately in Europe and America, make such a programme impossible. Moreover, medical care has become much worse in certain areas where the old hakims have died out without anyone taking their place. There has, therefore, been a conscious effort in certain countries, such as Persia, to bring back traditional medicine in combination with programmes for the spread of rural medicine, although probably the inhabitants of cities are

88. We have especially in mind the thoroughly documented work of Illich, Medical Nemesis, London, 1974.
much more in need of it. Likewise, there is a notable rise in the use of traditional drugs wrapped and packaged in new forms.\textsuperscript{89}

In conclusion, it can be said that Islamic medicine is fully alive in Pakistan and Bangladesh and among the Muslims of India, partly alive in the rest of the Islamic world in its popular and folk aspect and making a ‘comeback’ in certain areas where it has been on the defensive for a long time. Moreover, it is attracting even greater attention in the world at large as a vast treasury of medical wisdom and experience containing not only the fruit of the thought and experience of the Muslim physicians, but also all that Islam inherited from the ancient world. Islamic medicine is, despite everything, still a living tradition, still able to teach a great deal in fields as far apart as pharmacology and psychosomatic medicine to a humanity that has divorced the soul from the body and in its attempt to prolong man’s earthly journey has almost destroyed the very equilibrium which has made this journey possible over the ages.

\textsuperscript{89} In Pakistan and India, such institutions as the Hamdard of Delhi and Karachi have been active in the field for decades, but in other places, such as Persia, making traditional drugs available in modern chemists’ shops as well as the traditional \textit{`attār} in is a very recent phenomenon.
Chapter IX
Alchemy
and Other Occult Sciences

The Occult Sciences in Islamic Civilization

Besides the 'open' and 'accessible' sciences discussed so far, the Islamic sciences include a category called the hidden (khafiyah) or occult (gharibah) sciences, which have always remained 'hidden', both in the content of their teachings and in the manner of gaining accessibility to them, because of their very nature. The saying of René Guénon that there are no occult sciences but only 'occulted sciences' holds true as much for the Islamic world as for the West. These sciences in their unadulterated form – and not in their half-mutilated, present-day form in which their symbolism is forgotten – deal with hidden forces within the cosmos and the means of dealing with these forces. In a traditional world, these sciences were kept hidden in order to protect society from their being used, or rather misused, by the unqualified, much like esotericism itself, of which they are branches. The traditional occult sciences are, in fact, applications of cosmological sciences, and are understandable only in the light of a living esotericism having the metaphysical doctrines necessary to make lucid the symbolism they contain.

Without the light of such an esotericism they become opaque and, in fact, dangerous channels for spreading chaos on the plane of external forms, both natural and human. The cultivation of the occult sciences in the modern world is a glaring example of such a case, where the singular lack of the light of wisdom has turned the 'occult sciences', whose principles have been totally forgotten, into major factors in the spread of disorder and chaos.¹

In the Islamic world the situation has been completely different. While, on the exoteric level, the cultivation of the occult sciences, especially those dealing with prognostication, were forbidden or at least discouraged, on the esoteric level they became ancillaries to the purely esoteric doctrines of gnosis. Moreover, in the light of the esoteric dimension of the Quranic revelation, these sciences, some of purely Semitic origin and others inherited from the Hellenistic, Egyptian, Babylonian and Iranian worlds, became like shining stars in the firmament, providing so many keys for the contemplative understanding of the inner processes of the natural order.

The Applied Sciences

The Nature of Alchemy

Without doubt, the most widespread and significant of these sciences in Islam was alchemy, which, as in the Latin West, was considered at once a science and an art (ṣinā‘ah). Traditional alchemy is, in fact, a complete way of looking at things. It is at the same time a science of the cosmos and a science of the soul and is related to art and metallurgy on the one hand and spiritual psychotherapy on the other. The alchemical point of view is based on the principle that ‘everything is in everything’, that everything penetrates everything (tadākhul), and that therefore the substance of things can be transmuted so that their nature can be changed rather than only their accidents as is taught in Aristotelian natural philosophy.

To speak of alchemy is to speak of transmutation of the substance of things in the presence of a spiritual agent symbolized by the Philosophers’ Stone. It means also, and above all, the inner transmutation of the subject, of man himself, who participates in the process of which only the external aspect is discernible. Alchemy is concerned with the material world, especially minerals and metals, but not considered solely in themselves. Rather, it sees in them the insignia of the cosmic intelligence and makes use of the alchemical processes concerning them as supports for the transformation of the soul. Alchemy is not a protochemistry, although the history of chemistry is inseparable from it. Nor is it a purely psychological science in the manner interpreted by C. G. Jung and his disciples. It is a science embracing at once the cosmos and the soul, based on the view of nature as a sacred domain whose processes of giving birth to precious metals and minerals are accelerated by the alchemist through the power of the Spirit operating within his soul and making possible the final deliverance of the soul from all bondage and its transformation into gold, which alone among metals remains unaffected by the withering influences of natural forces. To seek in alchemy either a crude chemistry or a psychology in the modern sense of the word is to remain blind to the sacred view of nature and the doctrine of the unicity of the cosmos which form the foundation of all the traditional sciences, especially alchemy, and which stand at the antipode of the segmented and secularized world which forms the ‘object or subject of study’ of both modern chemistry and modern psychology.

Islamic alchemy, which reached its height at the beginning of its history with Jābir ibn Ḥayyān, contains a total ‘philosophy of nature’ related closely to the general philosophical outlook of classical Hermeticism, as well as a specific doctrine concerning the mineral kingdom and the transmutation of metals into gold. The basis of this natural philosophy is, as in Peripatetic physics, the doctrine of hylo-morphism, the four natures or qualities and the four elements, although these are interpreted somewhat differently in the two schools. The four natures combine in various permutations, as specified in Figure 86, to give rise to the two basic substances, or principles, of sulphur and mercury. These two principles are not, however, to be confused with the physical substances bearing the same name. Rather, the alchemical sulphur and mercury correspond to the masculine and feminine principles on the cosmic plane from whose wedding all creatures come into being. They correspond in many ways to the Yin-

2. As far as alchemy is concerned, Latin alchemy is both historically and conceptually a direct continuation of Islamic alchemy, as the name of the art itself from the Arabic al-kimya reveals. See Nasr, Science and Civilization in Islam, pp. 285ff.


4. According to traditional Islamic metaphysics, the first determination of the Absolute (the level of ahadiyyah according to the followers of the school of Ibn ‘Arabi) is one in which all the Divine Names and Qualities are determined but as yet indistinct in such a way that every Quality is in every other Quality. It might be said that the alchemical point of view reflects this principal Reality on the level of cosmic existence.

5. The ideal of alchemy as a form of ‘obstetrics’ which delivers gold from the bosom of nature is an ancient one which Islamic alchemy inherited from its Alexandrian background. See M. Eliade, The Forge and the Crucible, trans. by S. Cossin, London, 1962, chap. 4.

plays a crucial role in Islamic alchemy. The balance is not just a physical instrument to measure weights, and its presence in Jābirean alchemy is by no means the sign of the early appearance of quantitative analysis in the history of chemistry. Rather, the balance is the instrument which 'measures' the tendency of the World Soul towards a particular composition, the act of 'measurement' being meant here in its Pythagorean rather than modern sense. The balance is, therefore, concerned with inner and outer qualities and with numeral symbolism, as well as with the symbolic letters of the Arabic alphabet.

According to Jābir, each metal possesses an outward (zāhir) and an inward (bāṭin) aspect, two qualities being manifested outwardly and two remaining inward. Gold, the most perfect of metals, is, for example, outwardly hot and humid but inwardly cold and dry while silver is its opposite. Jābir, moreover, divides each quality into four degrees and each degree into seven subdivisions, so that there are altogether twenty-eight parts, each of which corresponds to a letter of the Arabic alphabet. The four natures also exist in each metal according to the series 1:3:5:8, the sum being 17, which is the key to the understanding of the structure of the world. The series 1:3:5:8, as well as the numbers 17 and 28, are intimately bound to the magic square of nine houses \[\begin{array}{ccc}4 & 9 & 2 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \\ 8 & 1 & 6 \end{array}\] which if divided gnomonically will give the numbers 28 (4 + 9 + 2 + 7 + 6), 17 (3 + 5 + 1 + 8) and the series 1:3:5:8.9 The numbers used by Jābir are closely related to the Pythagorean musical scale, to ancient Babylonian architecture, and also to the Chinese Ming-Tang, indicating early contacts with the Chinese tradition in this domain.

Jābir and other Islamic alchemists following him devised elaborate tables showing the correspondence of the letters of the alphabet with the degrees of the various qualities and the 'amount' of each quality existing in the metal in question. The name of the metal in Arabic is therefore connected through these tables to the very structure of the metal.10 In Jābirean alchemy, the treatment of alchemical qualities is inseparable from the

---

7. See Guénon, op. cit., chap. XXII; also Eliade, op. cit., chap. 9.


10. See Kraus, op. cit., pp. 223ff.
science of numbers on the one hand and the science of letters (al-jafr) on the other. Every metal is constituted of the same qualities in differing internal and external proportions, and transmutation means the change of these proportions according to the tables devised and with the help of the cosmic balance which is itself the source for the tables.

It must be remembered, however, that alchemical transmutation is not simply a ‘natural’ process. It is the result of the direct intrusion of a higher principle upon the physical plane and a quickening of cosmic processes made possible only through the presence of forces from the worlds above in the same way that inwardly the transformation of the soul is possible only through the presence of the Spirit. This fundamental aspect of alchemy, which alone should clearly distinguish it from any form of proto-chemistry, is intimately bound to the elixir (from the Arabic al-iksir) and also the Philosophers’ Stone (khatarat al-falâsîfah). The elixir is of different kinds, seven elixirs being enumerated by Jâbir, some mineral, others vegetable and yet others animal, while the Philosophers’ Stone is only mineral. But in both cases the necessity of their presence in the act of transmutation means the presence of a spiritual force not to be found by simply searching among natural substances. That is why the terms elixir and Philosophers’ Stone imply something rare and precious, inaccessible save to the adepts. In Arabic and Persian, the term kimiyâ’ itself, from which comes the word alchemy, means not only the art but also the substance whose presence makes transmutation possible, and even the fruit of transmutation, which is gold.

Alchemical transmutation is a process, a work consisting of various stages which are often summarized as blackening (nigredo), bleaching (albedo) and reddening (rubedo) of the ‘stone’ that is to be transmuted. It is achieved through nature itself but with the help of the art of alchemy and through the grace of God which is absolutely essential if the process is to be successful. The alchemists say that ‘nature can overcome nature’, meaning that alchemy makes use of nature itself to bring about the transmutation of natural substances. But this overcoming of nature by nature is possible only with the help of the spiritual presence which transcends the natural order and yet is ‘supernaturally natural’. The stages of the alchemical work imply death and resurrection, and dissolution and coagulation, in such a way that the base metal, disordered and chaotic, is transformed into gold, the solar metal and the symbol of perfection and harmony on the physical level. The work implies the dissolution of what is coagulated and the coagulation or crystallization of what is dissolved. The famous saying of the fifth and sixth Shi‘ite Imâms in whose circle Jâbir was trained, namely ‘Our spirits are our bodies and our bodies our spirits’ (arwâhunâ ajsâ’dunâ wa ajsâ’dunâ arwâhunâ) means, among other things, the alchemical transmutation which crystallizes and fixes the volatile spirit and dissolves the coagulated and dense body.

The famous alchemical salva et coagula not only concerns minerals and metals but is also directly connected with the spiritual alchemy through which the hardened heart of fallen man is dissolved and the amorphous aspects of his soul crystallized. The alchemical work is in fact an inward process through which the soul is transformed, but by making use of external metallurgical and alchemical processes as a support, thanks to the analogy between the microcosm and the macrocosm. While the base metal is melted in the athanor (from the Arabic al-tannîr or oven), the hardened crust of the soul of man which prevents him from reaching the fountain of life at the centre of his being is melted within the body, which is the microcosmic athanor, until the crust dissolves and ceases to be an impediment to the flow of the water of life. The death and resurrection of metals is an outward support for the death and resurrection of the soul, and the phoenix rising from its ashes is none other than the state of the soul of the initiate after it becomes freed from the prison of passions and limitation. The wedding of the sun and the moon or the king and the queen so often depicted in alchemical texts is, of course, the symbol of the wedding of the soul to the Spirit.

Alchemy, like Tantrism, makes use of the cosmic forces themselves in order to transcend

11. See Burckhardt, op. cit., chap. 9.

12. There are some vivid illustrations of this principle from mediaeval and Renaissance Western manuscripts in C. G. Jung, Psychology and Alchemy, trans. by R. F. C. Hull, New York, 1953, for example p. 316. The interpretation is, however, full of grave errors since the fundamental differences between Spirit and Soul are not emphasized by Jung.
the cosmos. It is a discipline whereby the male principle is devoured by the female principle to rise again in perfected form and to become wedded to the female principle in a union which itself is beyond all cosmic dualities. In this process, the mineral kingdom acts as a support for the alchemist, while the transformation within the being of the alchemist affects the external natural environment about him. The transformation of the soul of fallen man into the state of sanctity is a miracle which corresponds to the transmutation of base metal into gold. Both gold and the soul of the saint have become incorruptible within the world of generation and corruption where everything else withers away. They are both vice-gerents of the Spirit in this world, each on its own plane, and therefore correspond to each other in many ways. One is the fruit of inner alchemy and the other of outward alchemy. But ultimately there is a unity which embraces the inward and the outward and there is ultimately but one alchemy which makes possible both the inward and the outward transmutation.

Debates about Transmutation

The possibility of transforming base metal into gold was debated throughout Islamic history by Muslim scientists, philosophers and theologians, as it was in the West. Usually the theologians (mutakallimūn) opposed alchemy and the occult sciences in general, although some among them, such as the Muṭazilite Qāḍī ʻAbd al-Jabbar and the Ashʿarite Fakhr al-Dīn al-Rāzī, wrote treatises on them. Most philosopher-scientists and physicians accepted the alchemical point of view, even if they did not believe in transmutation. Usually the Peripatetics opposed the possibility of transmutation while the Illuminationists accepted it.

Ibn Sinā, for example, clearly opposed those who claimed to turn base metal into gold and wrote against them. Yet, the theory of the composition of metals which he presents in his Shifā' is based on the sulphur-mercury theory and is the same as that of the alchemists. Ibn Sinā was in fact taken to task by al-Ṭughrāʾi for his opposition to alchemy and the debate continued over the centuries. Usually in theological circles, those associated with Shiʿism, which early in its history integrated certain facets of Hermeticism into itself, were more sympathetic to alchemy than the Ashʿarite theologians, although there were notable exceptions. As for philosophy, schools which were of a more esoteric nature were naturally more interested in alchemy. In fact the highest and most profound interpretation of alchemy was to be given by the representatives of Islamic esotericism such as Ibn ʻArabī, who was himself entitled the ‘red sulphur’ (al-kibrit al-ahmar).

The Historical Development of Islamic Alchemy

While the origin of alchemy is hidden in the vast spans of prehistory, alchemy as a systematized discipline, with its written texts and established authorities, appears in Alexandria and China at almost the same time, namely just before the beginning of the Christian era. Islam was heir to the whole of the Alexandrian alchemical heritage and also, without doubt, had some contact with Chinese alchemy, from which it adopted many elements, including not only the numerical concerns already cited but also the meaning of the term alchemy itself, as both the art of transmutation and the substance which makes transmutation possible.

The Muslim sources contain the names of nearly all the known Alexandrian alchemists as well as mythical figures associated with Hermeticism. The names of Agathodaimon, Isis, Klopata and Maria are often cited, as are those of Ostanes and Jāmāsib al-Hakim, showing the strong Persian element which was already present in Alexandria. Almost all the famous Greek philosophers from Pythagoras on were also cited as alchemical authorities as the well-known Turba and Symbols', Iqbal Review, 1966, pp. 22ff. On Chinese alchemy itself see J. Needham, Science and Civilization in China, vol. V: 2, Cambridge, 1974.

13. In traditional Islamic sources the wedding of the Holy Prophet and Khadijah is sometimes referred to as the conjunction of the sun and the moon.

14. S. Mahdiyassan has gone so far as to claim that the word alchemy itself does not come from Egyptian and Greek sources (chem which is the Egyptian for black or the Greek verb cheein meaning to pour out) but from the Chinese Chin-1a, which means the gold-producing juice of a plant. See Mahdiyassy, ‘Alchemy and its Chinese Origin as revealed by its Etymology, Doctrines,

15. The figure of Ostanes, the Persian, is of particular importance as the channel through which Persian influences penetrated into Alexandrian alchemical circles. See J. Lindsay, The Origins of Alchemy in Graeco-Roman Egypt, New York, 1970, chap. 7; also J. Bidez and F. Cumont, Les mages hellénisés, Zoroastre, Ostanes et Hystaspe d’après la tradition grecque, Paris, 1938.
Philosophorum (Mushaf al-jamā'ah in its original Arabic of 'Uthmān ibn Suwayd and going back to a Greek model) shows. In addition to these figures the Muslims also knew and cited Alexandrian alchemists properly speaking such as Bolos Democritos, Zosimos, Apollonios of Tyana—whose Sirr al-khaliqah (Secret of Creatures) was so well known among Muslims, Teukros and Stephanos of Alexandria.

The most important source for Islamic alchemy, and in fact a major source of inspiration for certain of the other Islamic sciences and schools of thought, is, however, a number of treatises attributed to Hermes and known in the West as the Corpus Hermeticum. What the mediaeval and even post-mediaeval West has known of Hermes comes essentially from Islamic sources rather than directly from Alexandrian ones, where, from the wedding of the Greek god Hermes and the Egyptian god Thoth, the figure of Hermes as the founder of alchemy and a whole 'philosophy of nature' came into being.

In Islamic sources the one Hermes of Alexandrian sources became three, hence the term Hermes Trismegistos (from the Arabic al-muthallath bi'l-ḥikmah), which has inspired so many philosophers and poets in the West. The three Hermes were considered by Muslims as prophets belonging to the golden chain of prophecy stretching from Adam to the Prophet of Islam. Hence Hermeticism was considered as a revealed doctrine and was easily integrated into the Islamic perspective because it was already 'Islamic' in the wider sense of the term as belonging to the chain of prophecy. The first Hermes was identified with the ante-diluvian prophet Idris (or Akhnûkh). He lived in Egypt and built the pyramids. The second was entitled al-Bâbili, namely 'Babylonian'. He lived in Mesopotamia after the flood and was responsible for reviving the sciences. The third lived again in Egypt after the flood and taught men many of the sciences and crafts. The Muslims saw the three Hermes not only as founders of alchemy, but also of astronomy and astrology, architecture and many of the other arts, and finally of philosophy. The first Hermes is entitled by Muslim sources Abû'l-Ḥukamâ (the father of theosophers or philosophers).

The Hermetic corpus in Arabic includes the celebrated Tabula Smaragdina (The Emerald Table), which appears also at the end of Apollonius of Tyana's Sirr al-khaliqah, the Kitâb al-Iṣtanātis and the Kitâb al-ḥabib (The Book of the Friend) all of which were very popular. There also developed a notable Islamic Hermetic literature which includes works of such diverse figures as Abû Ma'shar, Suhrwardî, Ibn 'Arabi and Afdal al-Dîn al-Kâshî. Hermetic writings formed a distinct corpus which played an important role in Islamic thought. Moreover, it was also influential in the West where its effect can be seen upon


20. More than any other figure Abû Ma'shar al-Balkhi is responsible as the source for the doctrine of the three Hermes, which was then reflected in different variations in numerous later works.

writings as diverse as the Parzival epic and the works of Giordano Bruno.23 Through direct contact and oral transmission as well as by means of translations of texts Muslims became heir to the tradition of Alexandrian alchemy and very early in their history founded a major new branch of the alchemical tradition which has come to be known as Islamic alchemy.24 The earliest Muslim alchemist who had direct contact with Alexandrian, and perhaps Syriac, sources was the Umayyad Prince Khālid ibn Yazīd, whose name is often mentioned in later sources. Although his activities are clouded in some uncertainty, there is no doubt concerning his interest in alchemy. There are in fact treatises by him which still survive, as well as many which have been mentioned by later sources but which are no longer extant.25

Islamic alchemy reached its peak rapidly in the early 2nd/8th century in the circle of Imām Ja‘far al-Ṣādiq, the sixth Shi‘ite Imām, who was the teacher of Jābir ibn Hayyān.26 As already mentioned, with Jābir, known in the West as Geber, Islamic alchemy reached a point never surpassed during the succeeding centuries. Jābir hailed from Kufa, spent much of his life in Tus, then came to Baghdad and died around the end of the 2nd/8th century in seclusion in either Kufa or possibly somewhere in Persia.27 He wrote a very large number of works to which later followers of Iṣmā‘īlimism, who considered Jābir as their own, added many treatises following his teachings and in the spirit of his doctrines. Together, these works are called the Jābirean corpus and they constitute a major collection in the annals of Islamic science.28 These include nearly every field of learning and especially alchemy where such works as the Kitāb al-sab‘īn (The Seventy Books) and the Kitāb al-mizān (The Book of the Balance) have served as the foundations of Islamic alchemy.29 Altogether the Jābirean corpus, most of it still not studied thoroughly, is the most important single body of works on alchemy in Arabic and the main source not only of Islamic alchemy but even to a large extent of Latin alchemy.

The Barmakid family of viziers, who were patrons of Jābir, were themselves interested in alchemy and composed treatises on the subject. Also, in the early 3rd/9th century, ‘Uthmān ibn Suwayd from Akhmīm (Panopolis) in Egypt composed the Arabic original of what was later to become one of the most famous of Latin alchemical texts, the Turba Philosophorum, which remained popular throughout the Middle Ages and the Renaissance.30 It is of particular interest to note also that the Egyptian Sufi Dhu‘l-Nūn al-Maṣrī, who was a contemporary of Ibn Suwayd, also wrote on alchemy, two of his treatises on the subject being mentioned by Ibn al-Nadīm. Nor was Dhu‘l-Nūn the only Sufi master who wrote on


25. See the general study devoted to Khālid by Sa‘īd Diwaji, al-Amir Khālid ibn Yazīd, Damascus, 1953.

26. Again, Ruska and others have cast doubt upon the alchemical teachings emanating from the circle of Imām Ja‘far. But here, as in the case of Khālid ibn Yazīd and Jābir himself, later research by Sezgin and others has to a great extent substantiated, rather than repudiated, the traditional Islamic view.


28. Sezgin, in the work already cited, has given detailed answers to many of the arguments of Kraus against the authenticity of the works contained in the Jābirean corpus. The new studies of the manuscript material by Sezgin have given a much greater historical reality to Jābir and his works than the ethereal picture of him depicted by Ruska and Kraus.

29. For a list of Jābir’s writings, see Sezgin, op. cit., pp. 231–269.

30. The Latin text of the Turba was published in Basle in 1572.
alchemy. Both al-Junayd and al-Ḥallāj, masters of
the school of Baghdad, are also said to have written
alchemical treatises, and works bearing their name
have survived.

A new phase was begun in the history of
Islamic alchemy by Muhammad ibn Zakariyya’
al-Rāzi, whose influence was nearly as great in this
domain as in medicine. A study of al-Rāzī’s
philosophical ideas reveals that he stood outside
the mainstream of Islamic philosophy and negated
among other things the distinction between the
outward (ẓāhir) and inward (bāṭīn) aspects of
things and the process of spiritual hermeneutics
(ta’wil) which is the journey from the outward to
the inward. Since alchemy is an eminently sym-
bolic science of the cosmos, the negation of ta’wil,
and hence the symbolic interpretation of nature,
meant also the transformation of the nature of
alchemy itself. Al-Rāzī, more than any other Mus-
lim alchemist, was responsible for the transforma-
tion of alchemy into chemistry, although he con-
tinued to use the language of alchemy. Works
such as the Kitāb al-asrār (The Book of Secrets)
and the Kitāb sirr al-asrār (The Book of the Secret
of Secrets – the Liber Secretorum Bubacaris in
Latin) and the al-Madkhal al-ta’limi (Propaedeutic
Introduction) were studied as works on alchemy by
later generations of Muslims because they con-
tinued to use the language of alchemy although in
reality they are more texts of chemistry than
alchemy. This is especially true of the Kitāb al-
asrār, which by mistake has come to be known as
Sirr al-asrār,32 and which is the major opus of
al-Rāzī on the subject. This work is definitely
more concerned with chemistry than alchemy,
despite the fact that the author follows Jābir on
many points such as dividing metals into seven
species including the ‘Chinese metal’ (khārṣīnī).
The later Muslim alchemists in general had not as
yet had an experience of minerals and metals so
emptied of their sacred content as to make pos-
sible the conception of chemistry in the modern
sense. They, therefore, saw al-Rāzī as an al-
chemist, although some contemporary alchemists
in Persia call a kind of imperfect transmutation
of metal into gold the ‘Rāzī transmutation’. Seen
from the point of view of the later phases of
the history of science, however, al-Rāzī must be
considered as the founder of chemistry.

One of the most notable contributions of
al-Rāzī to chemistry is his classification of sub-
stances. The well-known classification of sub-
stances into mineral, vegetable and animal is met
with for the first time in his writings and he must
be credited with this primary and all-important
categorization.33 Al-Rāzī also gave a careful de-
scription of many chemical processes such as dis-
tillation, calcination, filtration and the like, which
are also seen in the writings of Jābir as well as in
those of later alchemists, but which are particu-
larly well described by al-Rāzī.34 Being a physi-
cian, al-Rāzī was also interested in iatrochemistry
and is traditionally credited with being the first
person to separate, and make medical use of,
alcohol, although this traditional view has not
been proven by modern scholarship.

Ibn Waḥshiyyah was nearly contemporary
with al-Rāzī, but wrote in a completely different
vein. The famous author of occult works dealing
especially with agriculture also wrote several
treatises on alchemy, of which the Kitāb al-uṣūl al-
kalīr (The Grand Book of Principles) may be cited
as an example. He was followed in the 4th/10th
century by Ibn Umayl, author of several al-
chemical works, the most famous of which is the
Kitāb al-mā’ al-waraqī wa’l-ard al-najmiyyah (The
Book of the Silvery Water and Starry Earth). This
work is among the most famous in the annals of
Islamic alchemy and was also known in the West
as Tabula chemic.

The great Peripatetic philosophers of the
4th/10th century, al-Fārābī and Ibn Sinā, wrote
on the elixir and other subjects related to alchemy
but not on alchemy itself. But the philosopher and

31. See Nasr, ‘From the alchemy of Jābir to the chemistry
of Rāzī’, in Islamic Studies, pp. 90–95. On Rāzī’s
chemical ideas, see also H. Sheybānī, Kitāb al-asrār yā

32. See M. T. Dančepažuh (ed.), Kitāb al-asrār wa sirr
al-asrār, Tehran, 1964; U. I. Karimov (ed.), Neizvost-
noe sočinienie al-Razi ‘Kniga Tainyy Tain’, Tashkent,
1957. Ruska, in his well-known study Al-Razi’s Buch

33. See Holmyard, Alchemy, p. 89, for the details of this
classification.

34. On various chemical processes, especially distillation,
among Muslims, see R. J. Forbes, A Short History of the

Gehemnis der Geheimnisse, Berlin, 1937, mistook
the title of the Kitāb al-asrār for Sirr al-asrār.

200
historian Ibn Muskūyah (usually known as Miskawayh) was actively interested in alchemy.\(^{35}\) Alchemical treatises by him survive to this day and it is known that he spent much of his life in the quest of the Philosophers’ Stone. Of the earlier Muslim philosophers, he was, with the exception of al-Rāzī, the person most devoted to the alchemical art.

The most noteworthy Islamic treatise on alchemical apparatus, the ‘Ayn al-ṣan‘ah wa ʿaww al-ṣan‘a‘ā (The Source of the Art and the Aid to the Students of Alchemy) of Abu’l-Ḥakim Muḥammad al-Kāthī, which was translated later into Persian from the original Arabic, belongs to the 5th/11th century.\(^{36}\) Also to this period belongs Abū Maslamah al-Majriṭi, to whom the well-known works, Rutbat al-ḥakim (The Sage’s Step) and the Ghāyat al-ḥakim (The Aim of the Wise), famous in the West as the Picatrix,\(^{37}\) are attributed. Abū Maslamah has been often mistaken even in Islamic works with the astronomer Abu’l-Qāsim Maslamah al-Majriṭi who lived at about the same time in Spain. Meanwhile, in the East, the celebrated Sufi writer Abu’l-Qāsim al-Qushayrī left behind a treatise on alchemy, while al-Ghazzālī employed the term ‘alchemy’ in the title of his Persian work Kimiyā-ye sa‘ādat (Alchemy of Happiness). But, as far as is known, he did not write a work specifically on alchemy although many apocryphal ones on the subject are attributed to him.

During the 6th/12th century, alchemical works of major scope appeared again in both the eastern and western lands of Islam. In the East the vizier Mu‘ayyid al-Dīn al-Ṭughrā‘i defended alchemy against sceptics and left behind several treatises on the subject including the Kitāb maťāth al-raḥmah wa mašābīh al-ʔikhmah (The Book of the Keys of Mercy and Lights of Wisdom). In Andalusia Abu’l-Ḥasan al-Jayyāni, known as Afra’ Ra’s, who was a fine poet, composed several alchemical poems, the most famous being the Shu- dhūr al-dhahab (Particles of Gold). Also in the Maghrib, the celebrated authority on the occult sciences, Shams al-Dīn al-Būnī, devoted a large chapter of his Shams al-ma‘ārif (The Sun of the Divine Sciences) to alchemy; likewise Muḥammad ibn al-Ḥajj al-Tūlīnsānī dedicated a section to alchemy in his primarily magical treatise, the Shumūs al-anwār (Suns of Light).

The most important alchemical work to follow this period is the Kitāb al-‘īb al-muktasab fi zirā‘at al-dhahab of Abu’l-Qāsim al-‘Irāqī,\(^{38}\) which is essentially a summary of Islamic alchemy and based on Jābir, Ibn Umayl and others. Nevertheless, it is a well-written synopsis which continued to attract the attention of later alchemists, who wrote commentaries upon it. Among these commentators, the most important is Ḥaz al-Dīn Aydamur al-Jildākī, who lived in the 8th/14th century. His Nihāyat al-talab (The End of the Search) is a commentary upon the ‘īb al-muktasab, while drawing also from earlier alchemical works. Al-Jildākī is, in fact, particularly precious as a source for earlier Islamic alchemy.

In the 9th/15th century, Turkish writings on alchemy began to appear in addition to those of the Arabs and Persians. Among them, ‘Ali Bek al-‘Inqi, called the ‘new author’ (al-mu‘allif al-jadid), is the most important. He wrote many alchemical works, including the Kitāb al-ṣārī fi ḥatk al-astār (The Book of Secrets Concerning the Rending of the Veils), which includes discussions on cosmology. He also wrote on the balance (al-mizān). Meanwhile, alchemical treatises continued to appear in the Maghrib with Abū Amr ‘Abd al-Karim al-Marrākushi writing on the Philosophers’ Stone and other alchemical subjects. His treatise Risālat al-ruḥāwīyyāt (Treatise on Edesan Inspirations) is particularly interesting in that it describes the alchemical process in the form of a dream. In Persia, at the same time, Shahriyār Bahmanyār-i Pārsi was composing his Tajārib-i shahriyārī in Persian.\(^{39}\)


39. See M. T. Danechepazhuh, Kitāb al-ṣārī, which also contains the text of the Tajārib-i shahriyārī.
In the 10th/16th century, Bel-Mughus al-Maghribi wrote a short treatise on the history of alchemy from Adam to the Prophet of Islam showing its revealed nature. He then described how the art was transmitted from the Holy Prophet to ‘Ali and his family, then to Khālid ibn Yazid and Imām Ja’far al-Ṣādiq. The author treats the transmission of alchemy as being like that of Sufism. In both there is a chain of transmission (silsilah) which alone makes their effective practice possible. Another fascinating figure of this period, Mir Abūl-Qāsim Findiriskī, but from the other end of the Islamic world, namely Persia, also wrote a treatise on alchemy. This remarkable sage taught the works of Ibn Sinā in Isfahan and Sufism in India. He also commented extensively upon the Yoga Vāsiṣṭha and exchanged views with Hindu sages on various questions of gnosis.

From the 11th/17th and 12th/18th centuries, Western alchemical influences began to be seen in the Ottoman empire, as can be seen in such figures as Ibn Sallūm mentioned already. Still, traditional Islamic works also continued to appear, as seen in the works of Ḥasan Aqā Sardār who wrote commentaries on earlier alchemical works in Egypt. As for Persia, there alchemy as an inward science of the soul became a special subject of interest for the Shaykhis, who have written numerous treatises on spiritual alchemy combined with Shi’ite gnosis during the past century. Likewise, some of the Sufi masters, especially of the Ni’matallāhī Order, wrote on spiritual alchemy, one of the most famous among them being Muẓaffar ‘Ali Shāh Kirmānī. To this day alchemy is practised in certain Sufi orders and by certain of the adepts although the use of its language is more prevalent among Sufis than the actual carrying out of its processes.

**Alchemical Apparatus**

Alchemists did, of course, deal with materials and, in fact, made use of all the technological know-how of the ancient Babylonians and Egyptians, especially in glass-making, dyes and metallurgy. But soon they developed their own distinct instruments which Muslims in turn inherited from the Alexandrians. The processes of calcination, sublimation, distillation, fusion and crystallization continued over the centuries as the main concern of the alchemists as far as the external aspect of alchemy was concerned, and so instruments to carry out these operations were developed and remained nearly unchanged over the ages. Many of the instruments described by al-Kāthi were also employed by Lavoisier and are, in fact, still found in chemical laboratories.

---

40. See *Nūr al-anwār az bahr al-asrār*, attributed to Muẓaffar ‘Ali Shāh Kirmānī, ed. by N. Subbūḥī, Tehran 1338 (A.H. solar). This work is a fine poem on alchemy and a masterpiece of its kind. Concerning the Philosophers’ Stone the author says (p. 14):

Alchemy and Sufism

Already the names of several famous Sufi masters have been mentioned as authors of works on alchemy. The link between Sufism and alchemy is indeed a profound one. First of all, Sufism as a way of realization contains, like every authentic spiritual way, three elements: a doctrine, a method and an 'alchemy' which transforms the soul of man. On this level of meaning Sufism found in alchemy a ready-made language through which it was able to describe this aspect of its teachings. Moreover, Sufism contains within itself a spiritual psychotherapy intimately related to the aspect of alchemy as a science of the soul. The Sufi master in fact operates upon the base metal of the soul of the disciple and with the help of the spiritual methods of Sufism transforms this base metal into gold.42

There is yet another nexus between Sufism and alchemy. Many of the greatest of Sufi masters, such as Abu’l-Hasan al-Shadhili and Shâh Ni’matallah Wali, are said to have transmuted base metal into gold without any external aid but simply through a glance (nazar), which, in the form of a miracle, 'translated' their inner state of sanctity unto the metal and affected through this

42. This does not mean that alchemy can be interpreted in terms of profane modern psychology in the manner of Jung and his disciples. Modern psychology, and especially psychoanalysis, are in fact a parody of the spiritual psychotherapy contained within traditional initiatic paths such as Sufism. See F. Schuon, 'The Psychological Imposture', Studies in Comparative Religion, Spring, 1966, pp. 98–102; and W. N. Perry, 'The Revolt against Moses', ibid., pp. 103–119.
means the necessary change within the disciples for whom such an act was intended. Altogether, it can be said that Sufism is a primaeval tree of which alchemy is a branch, or a garden of numerous flowers, in which alchemy is present as a perfume whose scent can be noted throughout the garden although belonging to only one species of the flowers present in the garden.

Alchemy and Islamic Art

As in the case of Sufism, in the arts, both plastic and audible, the relations with alchemy are so numerous as to need a separate treatise to do justice to them. Both traditional poetry and traditional music are intimately connected with the alchemical point of view through the effect they create upon the soul and the transformation they bring about within the soul. The traditional canons of both these arts deal with cosmological principles which are the same as those of alchemy and are concerned with processes which are akin to the Great Work. The end of both is the transformation of a base substance into a noble one. In certain great works of poetry and music the alchemical effect is quite evident, at least for the ‘metal’ which possesses the qualifications to be transmuted. Such works cannot be experienced without that break in the contractive aspect of the cosmic milieu and the expansion within the horizons beyond the material world which correspond very much to the stages of the alchemical work.

The same can be said of the plastic arts, of the harmony of forms in calligraphy and geometric design, whether they be connected with architecture or illumination of a manuscript. In all these cases there is a wedding between the alchemical or Hermetic and the Pythagorean points of view in the matrix of Islamic spirituality. Alchemy also plays a particular role in the harmony of colours and their symbolism. Without the

knowledge of the alchemical effect of various colours those masterly symphonies of colour, such as Timurid mosques or Safavid carpets, would be inconceivable. Alchemy is the bridge between technology and the spiritual principles of Islamic art and is one of the keys to the understanding of the inner meaning of this art.

Alchemy and Medicine

Finally, as far as the rapport of alchemy with other disciplines is concerned, something must be said about the relation between alchemy and medicine. In Alexandria alchemy was concerned with the mineral kingdom and the cultivation of gold and in China mostly with plants and the attainment of longevity. Islamic alchemy contains both elements. It was not only the early masters, such as Jābir and al-Rāzī, who knew and practised medicine, but throughout Islamic history many of the alchemists were also practising physicians. Their knowledge of herbs served both a medical and an alchemical goal and they even made use of mineral drugs in their medical practice. The relation between alchemy and medicine in Islam has not been well studied, but there is no doubt that, in this field, Islamic alchemy occupies a place intermediate between the alchemy of Alexandria and that of China. Some Muslim alchemists showed little concern with pharmacology or other medical questions, whereas others saw in alchemy a means of regeneration which they also applied to human beings, combining the techniques of alchemy with those of medicine.

Islamic Alchemy Today

As already mentioned alchemy is by nature a hidden art. It is not therefore surprising that orientalists have not run across too many practising alchemists in their journeys through the Islamic world. It is known that in the 13th/19th

answer to Ḥāfiz, Shāh Ni‘matallāh Wali, the founder of the Ni‘matallāhī Sufi order and one of the outstanding Sufi masters of Persia, wrote:

ما خلاك راه با به نظر كيماي كك

It is we who through our glance turn the dust of the path into gold.

The two verses show clearly the spiritual significance of alchemy and its rapport with the spiritual power of the Sufi master who, outside all ‘natural processes’, transmutes the lead of the fallen soul into gold, which symbolizes the state of the soul in remembrance of God and wed to the Spirit.
Plate 114. A contemporary alchemist at work.
century certain English Hermeticists travelled to Fez to renew their knowledge of the art, and a few practising alchemists were reported early this century in such areas as the Maghrib. But few realize that in those centres of the Islamic world where the traditional arts are still alive — in such cities as Yazd and Isfahan in Persia — alchemy still survives on a much larger scale than is outwardly suspected. Its dispensations, along with the more central grace issuing from Sufism itself, make the continuity of such arts as the weaving of traditional cloth possible.

A few real masters of the art survive along with many amateurish aspirants. The masters are well hidden and usually veil their activity by some kind of an outward occupation such as shopkeeping or the practice of medicine. Yet they are not wholly inaccessible for those who really seek them. To meet one of these masters is to be faced with the blinding evidence that alchemy is not simply a proto-chemistry, for in their presence one feels not as if one were in the presence of an ordinary chemistry teacher but as if one were bathing in the sun on a cool autumn day. They exhibit a spiritual presence, intelligence and inner discipline which proves that they are concerned above and beyond all charcoal-burning with the transformation of the base metal of the soul and the unveiling of the gold or the sun which shines at the centre of man’s being, were he only to lift the veil that eclipses it before the outward eye.

The Other Occult Sciences

Islamic science was heir to a vast number of occult sciences, mostly of a divinatory nature, inherited from ancient Babylonia, Persia, Egypt, Alexandria and even Arabia itself. These were usually classified by Muslim scholars as branches of the hidden or ‘occult’ (khafîyyah) sciences, along with alchemy and the like, in contrast to the open (jâliyyah) sciences, such as mathematics. Although dozens in number, the occult sciences were classified in the famous compendium of Husayn ‘Ali Wâ‘îz al-Kâshîfî into the five sciences of kimiyyâ’ (alchemy), limîyyâ’ (magic), himîyyâ’ (the subjugation of souls), simîyyâ’ (producing visions) and rimîyyâ’ (jugglery and tricks). The first letters of the five words together form the words kulluhusirr, which means, ‘they are all secret’.

Figure 88. A page from a treatise on magic (‘tilism’ (talisman)).

Although this is a famous traditional classification which was followed later by Shaykh Bahâ’ al-Dîn al-‘Amlî, it is a simplified one. The texts on the occult sciences contain numerous other branches. Probably the most popular of the occult sciences was jâfr, dealing with the numerical value of the letters of the Arabic alphabet and said to have been first cultivated by ‘Ali ibn Abî Tâlib. It

44. On the Arabic divinatory arts inherited by Muslims see T. Fahd, La divination arabe; études religieuses, sociologiques et folkloriques sur le milieu natif de l’Islam, Leiden, 1966.

is used to this day for purposes ranging from interpreting the opening letters of the verses of the Holy Quran to casting evil spells. Almost as widespread is raml, or geomancy, which is said to have come down from the Prophet Daniel. Although it originally made use of pebbles of sand (hence the name, which in Arabic means sand), special instruments were later devised with various squares and dots from which future events are prognosticated. There is a special interest attached to the mathematics connected with geomancy, for it seems to be related to the structure of living things rather than to inert matter in the sense of modern physics.

Other occult sciences which have always been popular include physiognomy (‘ilm al-fīrāsah) to which no less a figure than Fakhr al-Din al-Rāzi devoted a well-known treatise; the interpretation of dreams, which has also been dealt with by philosophers and Sufis, one of the most famous treatises on the subject being by the 12th/18th century Sufi ‘Abd al-Ghaniy al-Nābulusi; theurgy; all forms of magic, often making use of a combination of other occult sciences, especially jafr, as well as incantations; and even the interpretation of the twitching of various parts of the body (ikhtilāj). The latter practice, along with certain other popular practices, reveals late Turkish, Mongolian and Chinese influences within the Islamic world.

The occult sciences possess a vocabulary and language of their own and are impossible to interpret unless that language is mastered. They are all repositories of cosmological principles and have been interpreted over the ages in many ways and over a wide range as symbolic sciences by the sages as well as superstitions by those who have been unaware of their principles. In any case, their mastery, like that of alchemy, has been possible only on condition of realizing the principles

Plate 115. Instruments used for geomancy.

of which they are so many contingent applications. Without the knowledge of these principles they have become reduced to the superstitions which most modern scholars take them to be. But in Islamic civilization, because of the presence of a living esotericism, they never became dangerous as channels for the spread of dark and demonic forces as they have become today in the Western world, where the knowledge necessary to understand them is, in general, lacking, and all scientific attacks against them as superstition do not have the least power of stopping the ever-increasing interest shown in them. Only the sun can dispel darkness and turn a crystal made opaque in murky waters into a shining star. Anything else which claims to be the sun, without, however, possessing its inherent luminosity, cannot but add its own shadow to the spreading darkness.
It need hardly be mentioned that agriculture has formed the economic foundation of the sedentary regions of the Islamic world which have always been in conflict with, and at the same time in complementary relationship to, nomadic life. Agriculture has also provided the material backbone for the Islamic city which has been the site for the cultivation of the arts and sciences. Agricultural activity was an organic part of religious life to Hermeticism where the dictum that agriculture is the 'great alchemy' (al-kimiyāʾ al-ʿuzmāʾ) is attributed to Hermes himself. The Muslims were heirs, in fact, not only to the older religious teachings concerning agriculture but also to the experience of millennia as found in all the earlier civilizations of Western Asia and the Mediterranean world, including Egypt, Babylonia, Persia, Byzantium, Rome and even the Yemen.

Irrigation

The climatic conditions of the Islamic world have made the problem of water of central concern for agriculture in a manner that is hardly conceivable for the European farmer for whom water has always been practically as plentiful as air. In the heartland of the classical Islamic world, from Sindh to Morocco, water has always been very scarce, except in certain limited regions such as Southern Arabia and the Sudan which are exposed to the monsoon and Mazandaran and Gilan in Northern Persia which have a semi-tropical
climate. In other places every conceivable means has been used to make maximum use of available water, and human ingenuity has applied itself to the question of irrigation in such a way as to make this science or art one of the most developed in the whole of Islamic civilization. It is enough to mention in this connection that the Arabic word for geometry is handasah which is derived almost certainly from the Pahlavi handázah, a word denoting both computation and measurement of water canals, or simply irrigation.

In each part of the Islamic world the Muslims inherited the existing techniques of irrigation, some of which they preserved and others of which they modified and improved. Elsewhere, they expanded existing techniques or combined the experience in irrigation of different civilizations. In Egypt Muslims inherited several millennia of experience which they not only have kept intact until the present day but also improved upon as far as techniques of measuring the rise of the water of the Nile and similar problems are concerned. As early as the time of al-Ma’mûn, a nilometer was built along the Nile. It was rebuilt by al-Mutawakkil and restored over the ages. It continues to function to this day and is a reminder of the interest of Muslim engineers and scientists in Egypt over the centuries to deal with irrigation in the particular conditions of Egypt, which are not typical at all but present a special situation in the Islamic world.

In most other regions of the dâr al-islâm major river systems such as the Nile do not exist, and the problem has always been most of all to build reservoirs to preserve water rather than simply to measure the rise and fall of the level of a river. Dams were one way to create reservoirs in the path of smaller rivers. Most such dams were made of gravel and sand, yet with such strength that some of them have survived over the ages to this day. Others were built from stone and mortar often combined with the construction of a man-made basin. Some of the oldest of these reservoirs are to be seen in North Africa, such as the one near Qayrawan in Tunisia, which still survives. Like-wise, the reservoir which provides water for Marrakesh represents a fine example of the construction of the traditional reservoir as it has existed everywhere in that region throughout Islamic history.

The use of reservoirs relies, of course, upon aqueducts which bring the water to the cities and villages for both agricultural and domestic use. Aqueducts were constructed throughout the Islamic world in connection with reservoirs, as well as with rivers and mountain springs. The oldest of these aqueducts is that of Mecca which was begun by Mu‘awiyyah and which provided water for the holy city. In other regions the experience and techniques of Sassanid Persians, ancient Egyptians, Romans and Byzantines were employed and a vast network of aqueducts created in such regions as Andalusia and Persia which survive to a great extent to this day and which represent some of the most important feats of irrigation to be seen anywhere in the world.

Another problem with which Muslims, like their predecessors, were concerned with was, naturally, the question of raising existing water resources so as to make them accessible for either agricultural or domestic use. Here again they benefited from all the technological experience of their predecessors. In the former Byzantine province of Syria they mastered the use of the Noria wheel, which, in fact, continues to be used today in such cities as Hama. In the former territories of the Sassanids they learned the use of what has come to be known generally as the Persian wheel to draw water from wells. They perfected the use of this wheel and later took it to India where, under the Moguls, it became almost as popular as in Persia itself. Numerous other devices have also been used to elevate water, making use of human and animal sources of energy as well as the energy of running water itself and also the wind.

The technique of digging wells was also mastered rapidly, making use again of millennia of experience in such areas as Persia where, without wells, life in many regions would be impossible.

1. The central role of water and its vital connection with all life is emphasized in the Quranic verse, 'Have not those who disbelieve known that the heavens and the earth were of one piece, then We parted them, and We made every living thing of water?' (XXI; 30). Also in the Persian language the vital role of water in human life is reflected in two key terms. A desert devoid of human settlement is called biyâbân (literally a place without (bî) water (âb), while a human settlement is called âbadî (literally a place where there is water). The suffix âbad which is found as a part of the name of cities from Allahabad and Hyderabad in India to thousands of villages, towns and cities in Afghanistan and Persia is related to the same word, and reflects the crucial role of water for all human settlements, and also its scarcity in Persia. Strangely enough, when Persian culture spread to India the same term continued to be used although water was plentiful in the sub-continent.
Plate 116. The Nilometer in Rawada Island at Fustat, near Cairo.

Plate 117. One of the oldest surviving man-made reservoirs in the Islamic world.
Figure 89. One of the oldest surviving man-made reservoirs in the Islamic world.

Plate 118. A reservoir near the city of Marrakesh.
Of particular interest in this context is the _ganāt_ system, which is an ancient Persian invention found mostly from Syria to Afghanistan and occasionally in other regions, and surviving to this day in Persia itself and Afghanistan despite all the deep wells and electric pumps which have invaded these areas over the past decades. The _ganāt_ system must be considered without exaggeration as one of the masterpieces of both architecture and engineering in traditional Islamic Persia.

The word _ganāt_ is most likely from the Accadian or Assyrian word _hanū_, meaning reed, a word which also entered into Greek and Latin and which is most likely the origin of the word canal. As for the underground canal system itself, which bears this name and which is also called _kahriz_ in Persian, it was a fully-developed system in pre-Islamic Persia. It was considered sacred and identified with the goddess Anahita. During the Islamic period it continued to preserve its religious aspect since water plays such a central role in Islamic rites. The _ganāt_ system has been considered over the ages by Persians as having been the dowry of Fāṭimah, the daughter of the Holy Prophet. It has been revered as a God-given gift and its construction has been combined with religious ceremonies.

Moreover, during the Islamic period, all the known methods of mathematical calculation and engineering were put at the service of this art which brings water from high mountainous regions through underground canals to towns lying near deserts and deprived of local sources of water. To dig these canals, to determine their correct direction some fifty feet or more underground, to construct the canal with the correct inclination, to clean and repair a _ganāt_ which sometimes continues for miles, and finally to determine where to begin the _ganāt_ so that the original wells which provide the water will not dry easily is no simple task. These accomplishments are made possible only because of millennia of experience and of

2. On the _ganāt_ see the article ‘_kanāt_’ in both the old and the new _Encyclopaedia of Islam_. See also A. Smith, _Blind White Fish in Persia_, London, 1953, where the types of fish living in the _ganāts_ are discussed.
science, as the unique work devoted to underground waters by the great mathematician al-Karaji to some extent reveals.  

Anyone travelling over Persia and Afghanistan cannot but be impressed by the immense human labour which has made possible the digging of hundreds or even thousands of wells at a distance of a few yards apart, all connected inwardly by the underground qanāt which is usually roofed over with brick and carefully constructed to make possible the continuous flow of water with the minimum amount of obstruction of various kinds, including silting and the caving in of the roof. Some qanāts extend over tens of miles, sometimes traversing forbidding deserts to bring the precious substance of life from high mountain springs and wells to the lowlands. Sometimes the qanāts appear overland as streams and disappear

---

3. See Karājī (Mohammad al), *La civilisation des eaux cachées*. Karājī describes in this opus not only the application of geometry and algebra to hydrology but also the instruments used by master well-diggers and qanāt builders (*muqarni*). Before him al-Khwārazmī also made reference to the relation between algebra
again underground following the topography of the region in question. Altogether they represent a formidable achievement of man in drawing sustenance from nature in conformity with nature’s own laws and with full consideration of the climatic peculiarities which have necessitated the qanāt system to begin with.⁴

Of course, not all Muslim villages and cities have relied principally on qanāts. Many have been blessed by rivers. In such cases the problem of irrigation became essentially reduced to devising an efficient and just method of dividing the water so as to irrigate the agricultural lands around the towns and also provide for the water within the towns themselves. The system of irrigation of the city of Baghdad, which does not survive today but which has been described in several mediaeval sources, is a splendid example of the way this

and hydrology although he did not devote a separate treatise to the subject.

⁴ For example, in the warm sun any open canal loses much of its water through evaporation while the underground qanāt reduces this loss to a minimum.
Plate 124. View of the River Zayandirud flowing through Isfahan.
problem was solved for a city adjacent to two major rivers. There are also a few treatises dealing directly with the distribution of water in other traditional Islamic cities and showing how each sought to solve this important problem.\(^5\)

As far as an actual example of this type of irrigation is concerned, the city of Isfahan, which has a unique geographical situation, is of particular interest. Isfahan is an oasis in the middle of Persia surrounded on three sides by the desert; but from the Bakhtiyari mountains there flows through Isfahan the Zayandirud river which serves as the life-line of the city. The water of this river is divided, before entering the city, into many tributaries, some of which feed the surrounding agricultural fields and others of which flow through the city in the form of streams (mādis), providing water for the city dwellers. The division of the water of this river in such a way as to satisfy justly the needs of both the agricultural fields and the city is still based on the tract written for this purpose by Shaykh Bahā’ al-Dīn al-ʿĀmili, the outstanding Safavid Sufi, theologian and mathematician. The original text of the tract, which survives in a private collection in Isfahan, shows the remarkable mathematical ingenuity of its author in solving such a complicated problem. The traditional system of irrigation survives also in certain other Muslim cities such as Fez where, in the old quarter, people still use the traditional canals which bring water into the city from nearby hills. Altogether, both in agricultural fields and within towns, the achievement of Muslims in the domain of irrigation is one of the most amazing features of the material aspect of Islamic civilization and in certain regions is not surpassed to this day.

5. See, for example, Qāsim ibn Yūsuf Abū Naṣr Hirawi, Risāla-yi ṭarīq-i qismat-i āb-i qulb, ed. by Māyīl Hirawi, Tehran, 1347 (A. H. solar), which deals with the division of water around and in Herat.
Agriculture

The religious sanction given to agriculture by the Holy Quran and the Hadith, added to the variety of climates and geographical conditions which made up dār al-islām and the vast experience of millennia inherited by Muslims, incited them, from the beginning, to seek to improve and to intensify agricultural activity. Many plants were transferred from one region to another and stocks were improved through grafting and the like. Moreover, the religious character of this type of activity, which had existed since ancient times, continued to be reflected in early Arabic texts on agriculture. The spread of such products as coffee (from the Arabic qahwah), Seville oranges, cotton, sugar-cane, various kinds of melons, peaches and artichokes (from the Arabic al-kharšūf), to cite but a few examples, not only from one part of the Islamic world to another but also to Europe and ultimately to America attest to the worldwide influence of agricultural activity by Muslims. In such regions as Andalusia the Muslims transformed the whole pattern of agriculture and introduced a new set of plants which not only produced the Spanish garden, based ultimately on the Persian garden, but also changed completely the pattern of food production in the region.

Although in certain parts of the Islamic world there were large land holdings, there did not exist a system similar to the handing out of fiefs in mediaeval Europe, and therefore the use of the term feudalism cannot, strictly speaking, be applied to the Islamic world. Nevertheless, because of other historical factors, large units of land owned by a single family or individual were to be found nearly everywhere until recent land reforms. But the agricultural activity, even on these large plots of land, was organized on a small, human scale, techniques usually revolving around the family unit. Thus, despite absentee-landlordism in some areas and repressions by certain landowners, agricultural life fortified family and other human ties.

A great deal of know-how in the form of simple but efficient technology was connected with traditional agriculture. For example, small water wheels using animal power and numerous types of mills, some using water and others wind, were developed. The origin of the windmill has, in fact, been traced to eastern Persia. Likewise, the various stages of harvesting and threshing of wheat and other products made use of simple machines often driven by animal power and making maximum use of a closely-integrated economy. Some of these techniques survive to this day despite the spread of mechanized agriculture.

A branch of agriculture which received special attention was the growing of fruit trees. Fruits themselves play, to this day, a greater role in the daily diet of Muslims than they do in that of most Westerners. They also fulfil an important medical role. Therefore, much effort was spent on improving the quality of various fruits by grafting them and developing new kinds of products in various ways. Also, because of the vividness of the Quranic image of paradise in which the symbolism of fruits plays an important role, the cultivation and use of fruits have always had a religious significance, and some, like pomegranates and mulberries, enjoy to this day a direct religious meaning.

Plate 126. A man being encouraged to cultivate the soil.

Animal husbandry has been inseparable from agriculture. It is true that most of the daily products and wool have come from the nomads. But, to the extent that domestic animals are kept on farms, they function within the agricultural cycle of life. The same people have always cared for them who have cultivated the fields and have gathered the harvest. In contrast to modern agriculture where often separate organizations deal with husbandry and agriculture, in the Islamic world these two forms of activity have always been associated with a single mode of life. In fact the attempt to separate them over the past few decades in certain regions of the Islamic world has only led to unwelcomed economic and social results.
Plate 128. A simple cotton mill driven by a blindfolded cow, being urged on by the farmer.

Plate 129. The traditional method of threshing wheat, in Fars Province, Persia.
Islamic Treatises on Agriculture

As in other sciences, so in agriculture, in addition to inheriting the practical know-how and the oral traditions of their predecessors, the Muslims were also the heir to the major written sources of Antiquity. They knew of the famous agricultural treatise of Bolos Demokritos through quotations. The pseudo-Aristotelian treatise on agriculture, again known through the Geoponica, was also translated into Arabic. A very important source of Muslim writings on agriculture was the compendium of Vindanius Anatolios. Also of importance is Kassianos Bassos, the Byzantine author, who was translated into Pahlavi as well as Arabic and through whom Muslims also came to know of Byzantine agricultural practices.

Probably the first author to have written a scientific treatise on agriculture in Arabic was Yūḥannā ibn Māsawayh, the well-known physician, who in his Kitāb al-azminah (The Book of the Times) dealt with the subject. His student, Ḥunayn ibn Iṣḥāq, also wrote a treatise on agriculture. Moreover, in the Jābirean corpus there are several treatises devoted to various aspects of agriculture, usually combined with interest in alchemy and the other occult sciences.

Early in the 4th/10th century there appeared a mysterious and, at the same time, very influential work by Ḍhahm ibn Abī Bakr ibn Waḥshiyah, entitled al-Fīlāḥat al-nabatīyyah (Nabataean Agriculture). This work is said to have been translated from ‘Nabataean’ by Ibn Waḥshiyah in 291/904 and to have been compiled and edited by his student, Ahmad ibn al-Zayyāt in 318/930. The work is syncretic in character and combines agricultural studies with magic, omens and similar considerations. It was read widely in the Islamic world and has also been the centre of a long controversy in the West since the 19th century, when many scholars, such as E. M. Quatremère, D. Chwolson, E. Renan, A. von Gutschmid and Th. Nöldeke debated its character and origin. More recently, the issue has been reviewed by M. M. Plessner and T. Fahd. Views ranging all the way from ancient Babylonian origins to out-and-out forgery have been expressed. There is no doubt, however, that the work is a summary of a great deal of agricultural lore, including the religious dimension of agricultural activity, as it was known in the region of Mesopotamia and Syria in the pre-Islamic period and as it survived into the Islamic period. For this reason, and because of its wide dissemination, the Nabataean Agriculture remains a very important document for the study of Islamic agriculture, whatever may have been its origin or the sources of information of its author.

7. The original text of this work is lost and even in the West it is known only through citations in the Geoponica, Pliny, etc.


10. On the history of agriculture among Muslims, see Ullmann, Die Natur- und Geheimwissenschaften im Islam, pp. 43ff.; also the article ‘filāhah’ by M. al-Shihabi et al. in the new Encyclopaedia of Islam.

11. On all the writings concerning this debate, see Ullmann, op. cit., p. 441.

12. Because of Nöldeke’s strong attack against the authenticity of this work and even doubt about its author, for some time interest in the other writings of Ibn Waḥshiyah ceased. It has only been renewed recently by T. Fahd in many of his works. See especially his ‘Retour à Ibn Waḥshiyya’, Arabica, vol. 16, 1969, pp. 83–88. Early in the 19th century, a strange and fascinating work of the author was made known to the West by J. Hammer-Purgstall. See Ahmed ibn Abubakr bin Waḥshih, Ancient Alphabets and Hieroglyphic Characters Explained, with an Account on the Egyptian Priests, Their Classes, Initiation and Sacrifices.

There also exists in Arabic the Filāḥat al-rūmiyyah (Roman Agriculture) which appeared shortly after the Nabataean Agriculture and which is attributed to Qustūs al-Rūmī. The two works have been complementary in the eyes of later Muslim readers although the Roman Agriculture has never gained the fame and popularity of the Nabataean Agriculture.
There are few fields in Islamic science in which a particular region of the Islamic world has held an almost complete monopoly such as one finds in the case of Andalusia in the field of agriculture. For several centuries, from the 4th/10th century onward, almost every important agricultural treatise written in the Islamic world came from Andalusia, which also from the point of view of the practice of agriculture shows achievements rarely seen elsewhere. The first well-known treatise from this region was written in the 4th/10th century by Abu’l-Hasan al-Qurṭubi, who composed an agricultural calendar, the Kitāb al-anwā’. It was soon followed by Kitāb al-fīlāhah (The Book of Agriculture) of the famous surgeon, Abu’l-Qāsim al-Zahrāwī. His student, ‘Abd al-Rahmān ibn Waḥfīd al-Lakhmi, known in Latin as Abencenif, also wrote a treatise by the same title which became famous in both the Islamic world and the West. It was translated into Catalan and served as a basis for the Agricultura general written in 1513 by Alonso de Herrera. Ibn Waḥfīd was also keeper of the royal botanical gardens in Toledo.

In the 5th/11th century, Abū ʿUmar ibn Ḥajjāj al-Ishbili wrote several treatises on agronomy, of which the Kitāb al-muẓnīʾ (The Convincing Treatise) is the most famous. His contemporary ʿAbdallāh ibn Başṣāl from Toledo travelled extensively throughout North Africa and as far East as Mecca and Cairo. Then, upon returning to Spain, he composed a large volume entitled Diwān al-fīlāhah (The Agricultural Diwān) and a smaller treatise the Kitāb al-qaṣd wa’l-bayān (The Book of Concision and Clarity). Both these works are based on personal experience and observation and are devoted exclusively to agronomy without recourse to medical or magical discussions. The Diwān consists of sixteen chapters devoted to every aspect of agriculture, including the use of various types of water, such as rainwater, river water, water drawn from cisterns, etc., for the irrigation of the soil. Ibn Başṣāl was also interested in the properties of the soil itself and discusses it in both his works. In 478/1085 Ibn Başṣāl put his vast agricultural knowledge into practice and constructed a botanical garden in Seville for the ruler al-Muṭamid ibn ʿAbbād.

Although the 5th/11th century marks, in a way, the peak of agricultural studies in Spain, important works continued to appear during the next two centuries. In the 6th/12th century the Kitāb al-fīlāhah of Abu’l-Khayr al-Ishbili, which contains a general study of agriculture and special sections devoted to such common trees as vines and olive trees, became well known. This was followed during the 7th/13th century by what is perhaps the most famous agricultural treatise to issue from Andalusia, the Kitāb al-fīlāhah of Abū Zakariyyāʾ ibn ʿAwwām, which is also well known in the West because it was translated in the 19th century. This work consists of thirty-five chapters in which some 585 plants, including 55 fruit-bearing trees, are studied. The work is based entirely on earlier sources such as Ibn Waḥshiyyah and Ibn Ḥajjāj for its agricultural knowledge. As for the section on animal husbandry which forms an important part of the book, it too is based on earlier zoological treatises such as those of Aristotle and al-Jāḥiz. Nevertheless, the work of Ibn ʿAwwām is an important compilation and, along with the already cited treatises of Ibn al-Bayṭār on plants and their pharmacological properties, marks the sum of several centuries of study by the Muslim scientists of Spain in the field of plants and the agricultural, as well as medical, questions connected with the vegetable kingdom.

After Ibn ʿAwwām, a few treatises on agriculture continued to appear in Andalusia such as the Khulūṣat al-ikhtīsār fi marʿīfah al-quwā wa’l-khwāṣṣ (The Synopsis of the Sum-


Ibn ʿAwwām was also widely known in the Islamic world and was translated into Turkish in the 10th/16th century.
Agriculture and Irrigation

mary concerning Knowledge of Powers and Properties) of Abū `Abdallāh al-Awsī, known as Ibn al-Raqām al-Mūrsī, whose work is essentially a summary of the Nabataean Agriculture. But the last chapter in the history of agriculture was connected with the eastern lands of Islam. In the 7th/13th and 8th/14th centuries two of the Rasūlī kings of the Yemen, `Umar ibn Yūsuf and al-`Abbās ibn `Ali, wrote treatises on agriculture, the second being responsible for the important opus, the Kitāb bughyat al-fallāhin fī’l-ashjār al-muthmirah wa’l-rayāhin (The Book on the Object of the Desire of Agriculturalists concerning Fruit-Trees and Odoriferous Herbs) which is a precious document reflecting agricultural knowledge in the Yemen, which had had a long tradition in this field. Also in the 8th/14th century Rashīd al-Dīn Faḍlallāh, the powerful Ǧīl-Khānid vizier and the author of numerous works on history and medicine, devoted a section to agriculture in his Kitāb al-akhbār wa’l-āthār (The Book of Notices and Vestiges) which is an important source of knowledge for the practice of agriculture in western Persia at the time. His contemporary, Jamāl al-Dīn al-Watwāt al-Kutubi, also devoted a large part of his Kitāb mubāhij al-fikr (The Book to Delight the Mind) to agriculture, including a discussion on soils.

From the 10th/16th century onward the writing of agricultural treatises became less common. In Persia, Qāsim ibn Yūsuf Abī Naṣr-i Anṣārī, known as Qānī, composed a treatise in Persian entitled Kitāb irshād al-zirā’ah (The Book of Guidance in Agriculture) in the 10th/16th century. In the 11th/17th century two Turkish treatises appeared on the subject, the Rawnaq-i būstān (The Splendour of the Garden) of al-Ḥājj Ibrāhīm ibn Aḥmad and the Ghars-nāmah (The Treatise on Planting) of Kīmānī. The Turks also wrote many works on the cultivation of flowers. The Arab provinces of the Ottoman empire also produced a few agricultural treatises at this time, one of the most notable being by the venerable Sufi ‘Abd al-Ghanī al-Nābūlāsī who, in the 12th/18th century, composed an all-embracing book on the subject entitled Kitāb ‘alam al-malāḥah fī ‘ilm al-fīlāḥah (The Book of the Graceful Guidestop concerning the Science of Agriculture).

As for India, there too, despite extensive activity by Muslims in agriculture and irrigation, much of whose results still survives, few works were written on the subject. Sections of the Bābur-nāmah (The Book of Bābur) by the founder of the Mogul empire, Bābur, are devoted to agricultural questions, especially problems of the soil. Also the eleventh chapter of the Ganj-i bād āward (The Treasure Brought by the Wind) of Amānallāh Husayn Khān Zamān, written in the 11th/17th century, concerns agriculture. It is altogether strange that, despite the vast amount of activity carried out by Muslims in the sub-continent on irrigation, planting of trees, creation of gardens known as the Mogul gardens throughout the world and numerous works written by them on the medical properties of plants and fruits, so few works were devoted in that region to agriculture. The result of what they achieved in this field is there, however, to show that they possessed a great deal more knowledge in this field than they put into writing.

This relation between actual knowledge and its reflection in writing in fact is to be seen in the whole of the Islamic world as far as agriculture is concerned. There is a great deal more knowledge and know-how among those who practise agriculture even today than appears in the numerous works on the subject. The written documents are, of course, precious repositories of a millennial wisdom concerning man’s relation with the earth, but they complement, even in this day of forgetfulness, the knowledge which lies in the hearts of men and which is transmitted orally and through the direct instruction of each new generation of villagers by the older members of the community or the family. In any case, both in its written and oral form, Islamic agriculture contains a precious treasury of know-how concerning the wise use of the soil, water, plants and animals which cannot simply be thrown away as some have tried to do, except at a price too forbidding for the human community to pay. After the unbelievably rapid destruction of the top soil, the turning of forests into deserts, the lowering of the water table through misuse and numerous other tragedies which modern man has succeeded in causing over the various continents during the past century or two, the teachings of traditional

agriculture, of which the Islamic is one of the most important, become ever more significant. This is especially so since these teachings contain many elements that, if accepted and applied, can enable man to make wise use of the resources which make human life possible and which, if ignored, cannot but lead to the destruction of the equilibrium upon which human life on earth is itself based.
Part Five
Man in the Universe
Both Islamic science and its applications convey to those who are familiar with them a sense of harmony and equilibrium which is, in fact, directly reflected in the actual products of Islamic civilization, whether they be in the field of art in its narrow sense or in technology, agriculture, architecture and city planning. The continuous interaction between man and the natural environment which has always characterized life in various parts of the Islamic world, as elsewhere, does not give the observer a sense of aggressive destruction and a unilateral reaping of the resources of nature for the so-called needs of man. Rather, there is always the feeling that in this process of exchange, something is continuously returned to the natural cycle in such a way as to preserve the balance of life. The aspect of stability symbolized by the Ka‘bah and so characteristic of all manifestations of the Islamic tradition and its civilization is also seen in the Islamic sciences of nature and their applications in various domains. When one meditates on classical Islamic civilization, one is struck by the fact that, despite its undeniable dynamism and energy, the element of stability completely dominated it. In studying the Islamic world one does not have a sense of an imminent collapse, of continuous crises in the natural environment, of disorder and dissolution and the like which now threaten all mankind. There is no doubt that here and there forests were destroyed or the top-soil was removed through malpractice, but this was on a small scale and appeared as an anomaly in contrast with the prevalent manner of living in harmony with nature. There was certainly nothing to compare with what the modern world has done to the natural environment in the span of only one century. There is, in fact, a feeling that, had it not been violently disturbed from the outside, the system inter-relating man and his environment in the Islamic world could have continued indefinitely, that the relations between nomadic and sedentary life, between agriculture and technology, between using the resources of nature and catering to nature’s needs formed the life-providing rhythm within a living organism whose stability was guaranteed by the order, harmony and complementarity of these elements.

Today there is a great deal of talk about ecological equilibrium at the very moment when this God-given equilibrium is being destroyed by modern man in revolt against Heaven and against his own inner nature. The idea of ecological equilibrium is, however, far from being new. It forms one of the cornerstones of the traditional sciences of nature, including those of Islam. Modern science has grown during the past few centuries by forgetting the interrelation between
things, by isolating a particular phenomenon, by analysing and finally generalizing the results of this analysis. In contrast, the traditional cosmological sciences, especially those of Islam, are based on the interrelation between things, on the unicity of nature, on synthesis and the vision of the whole within which alone the parts have meaning.\(^1\) This is precisely what ecology aims to study, even if it limits its scope to the physical world. That is why it is so closely related to the philosophy of nature embedded in Islamic philosophy and science and is so alien to the prevalent 'philosophy of nature' in the West. The Islamic sciences may be said to be based on the profound intuition of the interdependence and interrelation of all things in the Universe, let alone the terrestrial environment, and their message for the modern world is, among other things, to remind man of the necessity of keeping in mind the central role of this harmony and equilibrium between opposites and the interrelation in every legitimate science of nature if this science is not to lead to the destruction of its own object of study.\(^2\)

The equilibrium between man and nature in Islamic civilization is exhibited most directly in the human habitat whether it be a small village or a big city. Considering the problem of urbanism and all that urban centres signify in the present-day world as the foci of disorder and the origin of the forces which have caused the ecological crisis, the planning and construction of traditional Islamic cities and towns are of particular significance and worthy of special study. Today, much is being said about integrating architecture into the landscape and making it harmonious with nature. The villages and towns in the Islamic world, like those, in fact, of other traditional civilizations, had already achieved this end long ago. It is enough to travel in the southern regions of Morocco through Berber villages or along the green valleys of Mazandaran in northern Persia or, again, along the foothills of the majestic Alborz and Hindu Kush chains of mountains, stretching from eastern Anatolia through Persia to Afghanistan, to see how villages and towns have been thoroughly integrated into different types of landscape, creating living human units of settlement which are at once beautiful and efficient and which are in complete equilibrium rather than conflict with their natural environment. The science and know-how concerning landscaping and town-planning which have made these settlements possible have hardly ever been described in learned books. In fact as yet no manuscripts pertaining directly to these subjects have been discovered in any of the Islamic languages. The tradition has been passed on orally from one generation to another. There does exist, however, despite the lack of written records, a knowledge, a science, which makes such achievements possible. It is a science which draws from nearly all the disciplines described in this book, from cosmology and sacred geography to geometry, to irrigation and, on another level, even to astronomy and alchemy, not to mention the various forms of technology dealing with brick-making, tilework, metal-work, construction and so forth.

What is seen in the smaller towns is to be observed even in the great cities, the major urban units which have always been the centres of cultural activity for Islamic civilization.\(^3\) Although cut off from nature to a certain extent through the very fact that it is made by man, the Islamic city has, nevertheless, always succeeded

1. On the central role of the doctrine of unity (\textit{al-tawhid}) in the cosmological sciences to which we have already alluded in chapter I, see Nasr, \textit{An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines}, pp. 3ff. As for the question of equilibrium between man and his environment, as well as within Islamic society, see C. Coon, \textit{Caravan, The Story of the Middle East}, New York, 1951, especially pp. 342ff.

2. Jalâl al-Din Rûmî has summarized the basic principle dominating the natural order in a single stanza:

\[
\text{صلح اص‌تاد اص‌ت اصل این جهان}
\]

The harmony between opposites is the principle of this world.

3. On the importance of the Islamic city and the study of its social structure, see I. Lapidus, \textit{Muslim Cities in the Later Middle Ages}, Cambridge (U.S.A.), 1967; I. Lapidus, \textit{Middle Eastern Cities}, Berkeley, 1969; A. H. Hourani and S. M. Stern (ed.), \textit{The Islamic City}, Oxford, 1970. See also \textit{Iranian Studies}, Summer-Autumn and Winter-Spring, 1974, devoted to the colloquium on Isfahan held at Harvard University in 1974, which includes numerous studies on one of the most important of Islamic cities, both architecturally and culturally. The studies range from irrigation to art style to religion and present one of the few cases of an all-embracing study of a Muslim city. For a unique study of another of the major Islamic cities seen from the point of view of the spiritual principles dominating every facet of traditional life, see T. Burckhardt, \textit{Fes, Stadt des Islam}, Olten, 1960.
in preserving its equilibrium with the natural environment and the natural forces and elements, such as water, air and light, upon which human life depends. The architecture and city-planning of the Islamic city have never been in defiance of nature. The traditional Muslim architects, in contrast to many Muslim ones in the contemporary Islamic world, never tried to use large glass windows to allow the maximum amount of radiation through and then rely on the maximum amount of external energy to cool the rooms. The planning of their houses, mosques, streets, markets, bazaars, and all other basic elements of city life were such that they made maximum use of the factors provided by nature. Where there are hot deserts, narrow streets were built to protect the cool air of the night during the daylight hours. Where the temperature became very warm, such as around the central desert (Kavir) of Persia, use was made of wind towers to ventilate homes, of deep basements to serve as places of refuge for the summer and of deep underground cisterns to provide cool water. The use of wind towers in the central cities of Persia, such as Yazd, Kashan and Kerman, is particularly instructive and shows how the science of man has made maximum use of existing natural elements to create an architecture which is at once beautiful and efficient, one which reflects the principles of Islam and because of this trait – and not in spite of it – is in equilibrium with the environment. The same can be seen in the way light is used both metaphysically and architecturally in the traditional house and city where it is at once a reminder of the Divine Presence, a source of joy, the means for natural lighting of interior spaces and the source of heat. Altogether, the architecture of the Islamic city, like that of the small town, brings together nearly all the traditional sciences and technologies and, with the help of them, creates an atmosphere of peace and beauty in equilibrium with the environment and reflecting the innate
harmony of the sciences, of which it is one of the major applications. 4

Another facet of Islamic science connected directly with the problem of urbanism, as well as with the ecological crisis, is the use of energy. The Islamic world is becoming known to many people in the modern world as the area from which most of the main source of energy used today, namely petroleum, is imported. Also, strangely enough, only the recent rise of the price of this rare commodity, which the industrialized world was receiving for a nominal price until now, has turned the attention of many to alternative sources of energy such as the wind and the sun. But the Islamic world can, perhaps, help the industrialized world more in solving its energy problems by providing guidelines in the wise use of wind and solar energy than by providing it with the petroleum whose resources will in any case terminate soon. The Islamic world can also render the greatest service to itself by not forgetting its own traditional philosophy and methods of energy usage in favour of a way of living based on the squandering of both energy and natural resources.

The use of the sun to heat homes, of wind to turn mills or ventilate houses, of water to provide energy for small technologies and the like all reached a degree of efficiency and utility combined with beauty which is not often met with elsewhere. The philosophy behind the use of various forms of energy was based on two elements: to preserve as much energy as possible in any process and to use the most easily available form of energy requiring the minimum amount of disturbance of the environment. These ideas might appear as obvious and their application may be said by some to be making a virtue out of necessity. But even in cases where there were choices, the Muslim scientists, architects and engineers followed a way which would conform most closely to these principles. Modern technology makes use both of materials, namely various metals and synthetic substances, which are not natural to the terrestrial environment and of energy in such forms as fossil fuel, electricity and atomic energy which again are not a natural component of the environment on the

Plates 133 and 134. Windmills in Khurasan.
surface of the earth, an environment upon which all forms of life depend, despite man's forgetfulness of this fact. No wonder that the rapid spread of this type of technology has led to an ecological crisis the like of which has never been seen in the history of the present human race. The use of energy in Islamic civilization, and in fact in traditional civilizations in general, represents a completely different approach, one which can teach a great deal to those who have discovered that man cannot exhaust in a few hundred years the reserves which nature has taken, according to modern geology, millions of years to form and yet hope to survive for long. Again, in this question, the main lesson of Islamic science is its emphasis upon the concept of equilibrium, on how to use energy on the surface of the earth without destroying the delicate ecological balance which governs that environment and which sustains life.

As far as the use of energy is concerned, a case of particular interest is that of transportation. The profit motive which dominates modern economies, not only capitalistic economies but also, indirectly, Communist ones, seeks to produce without end an ever greater quantity of material objects. To achieve this purpose, specialization is encouraged and specialization increases the amount of raw material and finished products which need to be transported. This, in turn, requires a greater use of energy and leads, moreover, to such problems as congested ports as well as city traffic which concerns mostly a particular type of transportation, namely that of manpower. Islamic civilization was always based on providing the maximum amount of happiness on earth possible in the light of man's ultimate felicity in the hereafter. Hence it did not seek after the maximum amount of production for its own sake. Rather, it aimed at local efficiency even when there was a choice to do otherwise. It is true that spice and silk travelled from one end of the Islamic world to another and even beyond it to other lands such as Europe, but each city and town tried to have as complete and self-sufficient an economy as possible. This is to be seen to this day, especially in the traditional village where small industries such as carpet-weaving function side by side with agriculture. After the tragic flight of the population during the past century to big cities, causing the strangulation of many cities and the falling into ruin of many villages, several Muslim governments which had been discouraging this tightly integrated economy and were encouraging specialization on farms and in villages have now begun to return to the traditional Islamic idea. The modern industrialized world will also be forced sooner or later to reconsider its philosophy of transportation in the light of the energy crisis and think of a new form of economic and city planning in which there is the minimum rather than maximum amount of movement of people and objects, and where a community can live at peace with its immediate natural environment with the minimum amount of external perturbation and the maximum amount of self-sufficiency.

Yet another feature of applied science and technology in the Islamic world is its intimate quality. Besides being inseparable from art (the word ʿināʿah in Arabic means both technology and art and is, moreover, related to the word ʿinā which means creation and which is directly connected with the Divine Name 'Creator' (al-Ṣāmi)), traditional technology is bound to forces and elements innate to the natural environment. It is also related to man in a way which is hardly comprehensible to those who identify technology with the modern machine driven by forces alien to the natural environment and possessed with

5. On the historical roots of the ecological crisis, see Nasr, The Encounter of Man and Nature, chap. II.

6. Modern geologists state that it has taken nature 400,000,000 years—whatever those 'years' mean—to form the existing fossil fuel deposits on earth and that at the present rate it will take man only four hundred years to exhaust these reserves!

7. We do not want to imply that this is unique to the Islamic world. It is found in all traditional civilizations and examples of it can still be seen in Hindu and Buddhist Asia in addition to the Islamic world.

8. The essay of I. Illich, Energy and Equity, London, 1974, has much to contribute to the discussion of this major problem.

the capability of enslaving the spirit of man in contrast to traditional technology which was synonymous with the practice of art and also the crafts and which played a major role in freeing man's spirit. What is of particular interest in the traditional technologies of Islamic civilization, along with their supporting social institutions, for today's world, which now speaks of the virtues of small technological units and 'tools for conviviality',¹⁰ is their human dimension, their relation to identifiable village and community units and their ability to provide economic wellbeing without causing social disintegration. Many of the arguments found in the works of leading critics of modern science and technology such as L. Mumford, I. Illich and Th. Roszak¹¹ and suggestions made by them to improve the lot of modern man crushed by the weight of his own inventions are already found in practice and still as living institutions in certain parts of the Islamic world. As the Islamic states industrialize rapidly, they are for the most part falling into the same pitfalls as the industrialized states while vowing not to repeat their errors. Traditional technology in the Islamic world can, therefore, play a crucial role for the Islamic states themselves as well as for the West and should be considered much more seriously than it has been so far, now that the crisis caused by modern technology is beginning to reveal its most sinister aspects.

Finally, it is important to mention the strong awareness of life and its natural cycles which dominates so many aspects of Islamic thought and even traditional technological and economic theories and practices. Life is based on the interrelation between units and a continuous recycling of energy and materials through the chain of life in contrast to modern technology as supported by modern economic theories where the use of materials is usually seen as a one-way process through an assembly line ending finally in the junk heap. Again, as a result of the recent energy and resources crisis, the re-cycling of materials is being encouraged, at least in certain industries, but it is far from having become general practice. In contrast to the modern situation, in traditional technology, of which many examples can still be seen in the Islamic world, the maximum possible re-cycling of all materials has always been the rule rather than the exception. This has also been combined with a feeling of reverence towards all material bounties and a strong moral sense concerning waste and the squandering of the gifts of nature which are also the blessings of God. The use of every part of the sheep for purposes as far apart as feeding the family to providing fertilizer for the land to making strings for musical instruments is a case in point.

These and many other aspects of Islamic science and technology have guided, over the ages, the relation of the homo islamicus with his natural environment. Although he has made a profound effect upon this environment over the centuries, the member of dār al-islām, whether living in a city, a village or wandering as a nomad, has lived for the most part in peace and harmony with the world about him. He has taken the natural environment to be his lasting home and not a besieged country to be plundered and laid to waste. Paradoxically enough, he has felt at home on earth precisely because he has always been aware that he is but a traveller on a journey on the terrestrial plane and destined for another world.¹² He has lived in equilibrium with his environment because he has submitted himself to the universal laws which dominate all levels of existence and which are the metaphysical source of the laws governing the natural world. He has lived in peace and harmony with God and His Law and therefore with the natural environment which reflects on its own level the harmony and the equilibrium of the Universal Order.


¹². It might seem strange that everywhere throughout the world while man considered himself as an exile on earth he lived at peace with nature as if it were his permanent home and that when he began to consider himself as a purely earthly creature and the earth as his final abode he set out to destroy this home with unprecedented ferocity.
Chapter XII
Man in the Cosmic Order

An essential feature of the teachings of Islam, as reflected in its sciences as well as its philosophy and cosmology, is that equilibrium and harmony with the natural environment is not possible unless there is harmony with the total cosmic order and ultimately with the Metacosmic Reality. The Islamic sciences are so many applications of cosmological principles and therefore, while related on the one hand to the physical world and the natural environment, they are bound on the other hand intimately with the knowledge of a higher order. If they serve the various needs of man's terrestrial life and make possible his living in harmony with his natural environment, they are also means whereby man can journey across the levels of cosmic manifestation to attain ultimate freedom. Their 'utility' is, therefore, twofold: they concern human life here below and also the end of man as a creature destined for immortality. Moreover, their message revolves around the central theme of the utter dependence of the lower states of being upon those above and therefore the necessity to possess the higher knowledge and to live according to the norms of the world of the Spirit in order to be able to cultivate a legitimate knowledge of the world below and to live in harmony and equilibrium with it. If the Muslim sages of old were brought into the present-day world they would assert that the state of the modern world, ignorant of the higher forms of knowledge and rebellious against the Spirit, and yet possessing a vast knowledge of the physical world which has led along with other factors to complete disequilibrium vis-à-vis the natural environment, is a blinding proof of the truth contained in the message of the Islamic sciences.

The role of the Islamic cosmological sciences in situating man in the cosmic order is fulfilled through those aspects of these sciences which deal with the hierarchic structure of the Universe and of man and their inner correspondence and interrelation all pointing to a Reality which is at once transcendent and immanent, which lies beyond the macrocosmic order and at the heart of the microcosm. It is through the study and finally the experiencing of the stages of this hierarchy that man is led from the terrestrial abode from which these sciences begin to the spiritual empyrean where the source and origin of
the traditional sciences is to be found. All the studies concerning the minerals, plants and animals, numbers and figures, the elements and the heavens which have been outlined in the previous chapters are themselves contained within the hierarchic structure of knowledge. The visible world is seen as a symbol of the invisible levels of existence and the traditional man sees himself at the bottom of a hierarchy which leads through the three kingdoms to the angelic world and from there to the Divine Throne (al-ʻarsh) and the Divine Presence Itself. Although he is located at the centre of the Universe, which symbolizes his central role as God’s vice-gerent on earth, he is also situated at the lowest level of existence, in a state which imposes upon him the sense of humility and servitude before the Divine Majesty (jalāl). The traditional cosmological schemes which are like mandalas to be meditated upon as well as to be studied, convey the two basic aspects of man’s situation in the cosmic order: the centrality of his position and the lowliness of his state. Of these two aspects one corresponds to his function as God’s vice-gerent (khalisfatallāh) and the other to his role as God’s servant (ʿabdallāh). Man cannot be solely the one or the other without doing injustice to his own nature and the world about him. But if he is aware of both aspects of his state and situation within the total cosmic order then he can both rule justly over the terrestrial environment and journey beyond the stars to the source of all existence.

The sciences of nature are like so many branches which lead to the trunk of the tree of cosmology itself whose roots are in turn sunk in the ground of the metaphysical principles which provide the tree with its life force. The sciences therefore not only provide for man’s needs within a normal civilization but above and beyond that obvious function enable man to relate every particular aspect of physical reality from rivers and hills to various animal forms to the total scheme of cosmic reality in which man is able to situate himself in a meaningful sense. In contrast to modern man, traditional man, whether Muslim or otherwise, has certainly always known where he is and where he is going and the cosmological sciences have always aided him to chart his course in the perilous journey between his present position and final abode through the cosmic labyrinth.

If one were therefore to ask of what use are the Islamic cosmological sciences one could answer that besides providing the necessary background and knowledge for particular disciplines of practical import such as medicine and agriculture these sciences have a direct practical effect upon the inner life of man. They are directly related to man’s real existential problem which is to traverse the perilous caves and valleys of the ‘mountains’ of the physical and psychic worlds to reach safely the sky of the world of the Spirit. Their eminently symbolic quality makes them a powerful aid to the exposition of metaphysical knowledge and gives them a validity beyond the significance of the physical sciences of a non-symbolic character which are affected by temporal change.

The masters of Islamic gnosis have provided many schemes in which the structure of the cosmos and the means for man to journey through it have been depicted often with great beauty. The Manṭiq al-tayr (Conference of the Birds) of ʻAṭṭār, the Inshā’ al-dawā‘ir (Creation of the Spheres) of Ibn ʻArabi, the al-Insān al-kāmil (The Universal Man) of ʻAbd al-Karim al-Jili and on a less gnostic and more philosophical level the visionary recitals of Ibn Sinā as well as numerous other works of a similar kind provide ample examples of cosmological schemes in which man is shown in his real situation in the chain of being at

1. The spiritual and the intellectual are ultimately the same especially in Islamic metaphysics where ʻaql in its highest sense is identified with both the Divine Intellect and the spiritual world. From the point of view of knowledge the principles of the traditional sciences are to be sought ultimately in the Divine Intellect while from the point of experience or existence they lead the traveller through the cosmic hierarchy to the spiritual world which is none other than the world of the Intellect (ma‘qilāt, intelligibles, and mujarradāt, spiritual beings, are nearly synonymous in Arabic).


3. For a study of this aspect of the cosmological doctrines of Ibn Sinā, see Nasr, An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, chap. 15, ‘Nature and the Visionary Recitals’.
the lowest point of the arc of descent (al-qaws al-nuzulī) and at the origin of the arc of ascent (al-qaws al-su’ūdī).4 These works also outline the means whereby man can traverse the states above him to reach the empyrean from which he has originally descended.

Traditional cosmology does not only concern the macrocosm but also the microcosm. It contains a complete knowledge of the soul as it does of the qualitative aspect of the Universe. Not only are there the earth, the seven heavens and the outermost heaven leading to the Metacosmic Reality, but there are also within man beside the physical body, the seven subtle organs or bodies (laṭā’if) which like the seven planets correspond to the various prophets of man’s inner being and the centre of the heart which, like the outermost heaven, is called the ‘ārsh al-rāhmān (The Throne of the Compassionate) wherein resides the Divinity. The contemplation of the external cosmos is an aid to the penetration of the inner world thanks to the correspondence and analogy which bind them together. As metaphysics is the key to the understanding of cosmology, so is initiation the key which opens to man the door to the inner chambers of his own being.5 By means of the initiatic path man enters ever more deeply within himself and at the same time through the higher levels of cosmic reality toward the Formless. His inner transformation includes the interiorization of the cosmic within his being and his freedom therefore embraces the deliverance of nature from the limitations imposed by cyclic conditions and its re-statement into its original state in divinis where nature is perennially a direct image of paradise.

The traditional cosmological sciences therefore concern man in an ultimate sense and on a level not to be compared with the modern sciences. The traditional cosmologies are related to man’s inner perfection and to his ultimate end. They are inseparable from angelology and eschatology. They provide the background for that process of spiritual maturing which enables man to become God’s vice-gerent in actuality rather than only potentially and thus to fulfil his role vis-à-vis nature as its protector and ‘window’ to the world of light.7 The traditional cosmological sciences, therefore, not only provided a contemplative view of nature, but by enabling man to know where he is in the cosmic order and by aiding him to journey beyond the cosmos, helped in a direct manner to protect nature itself. The devastation of nature could not have come about until the traditional cosmological sciences were forgotten and the sacred view of nature upon which they are based became rejected as remnants of ‘primitive animism’.

The destruction of nature in modern times is due also to another factor which is directly connected with the very nature of modern science in contrast to the traditional sciences. The Islamic sciences which have been outlined in this book, like other traditional sciences, never sought to satisfy the thirst for the Infinite in the realm of the finite. They were based directly on metaphysics and made no claim to usurp its place. They presented a ‘finite science’ of the finite and the relative domain of reality and left the quest for the Infinite and the Absolute to metaphysics and gnosis which alone can satisfy this thirst in a real manner. In contrast, modern science has sought to quench this profound thirst for the Infinite on its own level of finiteness forgetting the limits which have always been set upon the sciences from on high. And this has led to an explosion

L’homme de lumière dans le soufisme iranien, Paris, 1971, where comparisons are also made with similar ideas among Western Hermeticists and esotericists in general including Goethe.

6. We do not mean to imply by any means that a knowledge of the cosmological sciences is a requirement for spiritual attainment. There have been many saints over the centuries who have had no knowledge of them. But a complete tradition cannot do without them for they play the role mentioned above for certain intellectual and spiritual types for whom the aid of this aspect of traditional teachings is indispensable.

of the most dangerous kind which now threatens
the very harmony of the natural order. The
lack of quest for infinity on the level of finitude
which is to be observed in the history of the
Islamic sciences is profoundly connected with
the structure of Islamic cosmological and meta-

Plate 135. Man and the macrocosm.

8. ‘Science is natural to man but it is important above all
else to choose between the different levels, in the light of
the axiom: “My kingdom is not of this world”; all useful
observation of the herebelow expands science, but the
wisdom of the next world limits it, which amounts to
saying that every science of the Relative which does not
have a limit which is determined by the Absolute, and
thus by the spiritual hierarchy of values, ends in super-
saturation and explosion.’ F. Schuon, Logic and Tran-
scendence, p. 135.
physical doctrines. It also contains a lesson about what the boundaries of any legitimate science can be, a lesson which modern science should heed before its misled search for the Absolute and the Infinite in the relative and the finite order results in the complete destruction of the bound and finite world that is the sole subject of study of this science.

By placing each existent where it belongs in the hierarchy of universal existence Islamic metaphysics and cosmology were able to create an extensive science of the physical and of the psychic worlds which far from destroying nature only accentuated the equilibrium that exists in the cosmic order and emphasized the harmony between man and his environment. While the Islamic sciences taught man a great deal about the world about him and enabled man to rule over this world, they also set limits to his power to destroy the earth and pointed in a thousand ways to the fact that man’s end is to journey to a world beyond and not to be satisfied through pride or ignorance with imprisonment within the cosmic crypt which man’s forgetfulness has made to appear as his natural state. They provided a science of things which enabled man to contemplate the forms of nature rather than to destroy them before the altar of his passionate nature. These sciences enabled those who mastered them and their metaphysical principles to remember and never to forget that there is no reality except the Ultimate Reality (Lā ilāha ill’Allāh), that all cosmic manifestation from the sand pebbles of the desert to the angels are ‘sent’ by that Reality (Muhammadun rasūl Allāh) and that before that Reality they are literally nothing. For this reason the Islamic sciences, beyond all their historic and scientific importance for the Islamic world as well as other civilizations, have been for the Islamic tradition itself an affirmation of Divine Unity (al-tawhīd) and on the highest level aids to the realization of this Unity. For this reason above all others they still contain a message of the greatest actuality for mankind which is so deeply in need of re-discovering this Unity and of living and knowing according to the Light It has always cast and will always cast upon human existence.

wa’llāhu a’lam
Notes to Illustrations

All photographs not otherwise credited are by Roland Michaud.

Chapter I

Figure 1a. Quran II; 255.

Figure 1b. Quran XXIV; 35.

Figure 1c. Quran XXXIX; 9.

Figure 1d. Quran XLI; 53.

Figures 2a, 2b and 2c. These sayings are a small number of the large amount of Hadith recorded in the canonical collections of Sunnis and Shi‘ites alike concerning the primacy of knowledge in the Islamic perspective.

Figure 3. Prepared by S. H. Nasr.

Chapter II

Figure 4a. See al-Fārābī, Catálogo de las ciencias, edición y traducción castellana por Angel Gonzales Palencia, 2nd ed., Madrid: Publicaciones de la Facultad de Filosofía y Letras, Universidad de Madrid, 1953, passim.


Figure 5. Al-Azhar University is one of the oldest Islamic institutions of learning, founded by the Fātimids in the 4th/10th century and still the major centre of religious learning in the Sunni world.

Figures 6, 7 and 8. From the 11th/17th century Persian MS No. 14709, in the Islamic Museum, Cairo.


Plate 1. A typical scene in which a few of the younger students beginning their study of the religious sciences gather in a small group in a madrasah around the master to recite correctly and to interpret the meaning of the Holy Book and other important traditional texts. Since this course is being held in winter, the students are sitting round a table covered by a thick blanket inside which is a hearth filled with burning charcoal and called a kurshī in Persia, and a tandal in Afghanistan. This traditional heating system is still very prevalent in Persia and Afghanistan and, strangely enough, in certain parts of Spain.

Plate 2. Picture of the courtyard of the most ancient and influential university and adjoining mosque of North Africa founded eleven centuries ago.

Plate 3. One of the most beautiful monuments of Timurid architecture, built by a Timurid princess from her personal wealth and endowed heavily to support religious students. The school continues to this day as a major centre of learning in Persia.

Plate 4. One of the many notable schools in Samarqand built by the descendants of the Timurids. It survives today only as an historical monument. Early 11th/17th century.

Plate 6. One of the many important centres of learning built in Ottoman Turkey in which the teaching of medicine and the treatment of patients took place along with the instruction of students in the usual subjects taught in Muslim universities. The hospital even had a special section devoted to psychologically unbalanced patients.

Plate 7. Perhaps the largest centre for the practice of traditional Islamic medicine in India today. Photograph by Robert Harding.

Plate 8. From the 9th/15th century Persian MS No. F.1418, in the University Library, Istanbul.

Plate 9. A miniature depicting a Mawlavi Sufi centre with the dervishes occupied with the recitation of Sufi poetry and the performance of the Sufi dance. From the 10th/16th century MS No. H.1365, in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul.

Chapter III


Figure 12. From S. H. Nasr, An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, Cambridge (U.S.A.), 1964, p. 71.

Figure 13. From Shams al-ma‘ārif al-ḥubrā by Shams al-Dīn al-Būnī, Cairo, n.d., p. 291.

Figure 14. From Kitāb al-taqīḥim by al-Bīrūnī, 12th/18th century MS No. 6565, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Figure 15. From a manuscript in the Institute of Oriental Studies, Tashkent, Uzbek Soviet Republic.

Figure 16. From a MS in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Figure 17. From a MS in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Figure 18. From the 10th/16th century Turkish MS No. 6605, in the University Library, Istanbul.

Plate 10. From the 9th/15th century Egyptian MS No. 4689, in the University Library, Istanbul.

Plate 11. From the Gây u Chawgan (The Ball and the Stick) of ‘Arifī, 10th/16th century MS No. 1941, in the Museum of Islamic and Turkish Art, Istanbul.

Plate 12. From the ‘Ajā‘ib al-makhlīqāt (Wonders of Creation) of Muḥammad al-Ṭūsī, 10th/16th century Persian MS, in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Plate 13. From the 10th/16th century Persian MS No. 1404, in the University Library, Istanbul.


Plate 17 and 18. From Aya Sophia MS No. 2577, in the Suleymaniye Library, Istanbul.


Plate 20a. From the National Museum, Damascus, Syria.

Plate 20b. From the Turkish and Islamic Art Museum, Istanbul.

Plate 20c. From the Ni‘matallah Khānaqāh, Tehran.

Plate 21. From the Topkapi Library, Istanbul.

Chapter IV

Figure 19. From the 9th/15th century Persian MS No. 2127, in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul. The MS contains both the Arabic text of the Materia Medica of Dioscorides and its 9th/15th century translation.

Plate 22. From British Library MS Or. 2784, f.96r.

Plates 23 and 24. From the 12th/18th century MS No. 6471, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Plate 25. From the 7th/13th century MS No. 1266 of the botanical and pharmacutical encyclopaedia of Ibn al-Bayṭār, in the Ahmadiyyah Library, Aleppo, Syria.


Plates 27, 28, 29 and 30. From the 9th/15th century Persian MS No. 2127, in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul. See note to Figure 19 above.

Plates 31, 32 and 33. From the 9th/15th century MS No. R.1022, in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul.

Plate 34. From a 10th/16th century MS, in the New Delhi Museum.
Notes to Illustrations

Plates 35 and 36. Early 11th/17th century Mogul MS from the School of Jahângîr, in the Freer Art Gallely, Washington DC.

Plate 37. From the album of Mehmet II, MS No. H.2153 (1019), in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul.

Plate 38. From the 12th/18th century MS No. 6471, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Plates 39, 40 and 41. From the 9th/15th century Egyptian MS No. 4689, in the University Library, Istanbul.

Chapter V

Figure 20. Figure from Shams al-md'îrîf al-kuhra by Shams al-Dîn al-Buni, p. 227.

Figure 21. From MS No. 98, in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.


Figure 23. From the 10th/16th century MS of the Book of Wonders, in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Figure 24. In the Islamic Museum, Cairo.

Figure 25. From Khayyâmi-nâmah by J. Homâli, vol. I, Tehran, 1346 (A.H. solar).

Figure 26. From the 9th/15th century Persian MS No. 1359, in the Millet Library, Istanbul.

Figure 27. From Hakim 'Umar-i Khayyam bi 'unwân-i 'alim-i jahr by Gh. Moşâh, Tehran, 1339 (A.H. solar), pp. 153-154.

Figure 28. From the Kashf al-ghnost wa'l qu'râ fi sharh al-tarab, 8th/14th century MS No. 3465, in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul.

Figures 29, 30 and 31. From an 8th/14th century MS No. 4720, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Figure 32. From the Arabic MS No. 1206, in the Ahmadiyyah Library, Aleppo, Syria.

Figure 33. Islamic geometric patterns in comparison with the picture of a beryllium molecule as deduced by X-ray diffraction analyses. Prepared by Keith Critchlow.

Plate 42. From Esad Efendi MS No. 3638, in the Süleymaniye Library, Istanbul.

Plate 43. From the 9th/15th century Persian MS No. 1359, in the Millet Library, Istanbul.

Plate 44. From the Gök Medresse, Sivas, Turkey.

Plate 45. From the Friday Mosque, Kerman, Iran.

Chapter VI


Figure 34b. From Tuhfat al-ajilah fi ma'rifat al-qibli by Haydar Quili ibn Pir Muhammad Khân Sardar Kâbuli, trans. by S. H. Nasr, Tehran, 1319 (A.H. solar), pp. 19-20.

Figure 35. From al-Āhid al-bâqiya 'an al-qurûn al-ka'âlîyab by al-Biruni, 8th/14th century MS Or. 161 f6v, in Edinburgh University Library.

Figure 36. From the resume of the Almagest of Ptolemy, 4th/10th century, MS No. 8093, in the National Library, Tunis.

Figures 37 and 38. From the Sûwar al-katwâkh, 9th/15th century Arabic MS No. 197, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Figure 39. From the Sûwar al-katwâkh, 11th/17th century MS No. 196, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Figure 40. From Kitâb al-tâfhim by al-Biruni, MS No. 6565, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Figure 41. From the 8th/14th century MS of a collection (Majmu'ah) of Naṣîr al-Dîn al-Ṭûsî on mathematics and astronomy, MS No. 1346, Central Library, Tehran University.

Figure 42. From Kitâb al-tâfhim by al-Biruni, MS No. 6565, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Figures 43, 44, 45 and 46. From Risâlah mu'ayyanah and Hall-i muskhalât-i mu'ayyanah contained in the Majmu'ah on mathematics and astronomy, MS No. 1346, Central Library, Tehran University.

Figure 47. From an 8th/15th century MS No. 4720, in the Majles Library, Tehran.


Figures 49 and 50. From the Ulugh Beg Museum, Samarqand, Uzbek Soviet Republic.

Figure 52. From the Qarawiyin Mosque, Fez, Morocco.

Figures 54, 55 and 56. From Kitâb al-tâfhim by al-Birûnî, 12th/18th century MS No. 6565, in the Majles Library, Tehran.


Figure 62. From a collection of miscellanea, 9th/15th century MS No. B 411, in the Topkapı Library, Istanbul.

Figure 63. From a Persian MS in the Nīmatallāh Khānaqāh Library, Tehran.

Figure 64. From the Majma‘ah of al-Ṭūsī, MS No. 1346, in the University Central Library, Tehran.

Plate 46. A 12/18th century instrument in the Aleppo Museum, Syria.

Plate 47. From the Turkish translation of ‘Īqād al-jumān fi ta‘rīkh ahl al-zamān of Maḥmūd ibn Aḥmad al-‘Ayn, MS No. TY 5953, in the University Library, Istanbul.

Plate 48. From the Šūwar al-kawākiḥ, 9th/15th century Arabic MS, in the Malek Library, Tehran.

Plates 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59 and 60. The signs are from a collection of MSS as follows: Aries, Gemini, Libra, Pisces from Šūwar al-kawākiḥ, of al-Ṣūfī, 11th/17th century MS No. 197, in the Malek Library, Tehran.


Cancer from Šūwar al-sanawiyah, Reza Library, Rampur, India. Photograph by Robert Harding.


Plate 61. One of several figures of this kind which appeared in Islamic astronomical and astrological treatises after the 7th/13th century. From the Wonders of Creation of Muḥammad al-Ṭūsī, 10th/16th Persian MS, in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Plate 62. From Kitāb al-taḥīm by al-Bīrūnī, MS No. 6565, in the Malek Library, Tehran.

Plate 63. From the 9th/15th century Persian MS of the Wonders of Creation in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Plate 64. From the original MS of the Zīj in the Salar Jang Museum, Hyderabad, Deccan, India. Photograph by Robert Harding.

Plate 65. From the Šāhānshāhī-=?nah, 10th/16th century, MS No. FY 1404, in the University Library, Istanbul.


Plate 70. From the Qarawiyyin Mosque, Fez, Morocco.

Plate 71. Opposite the Bāb ‘Ināniyyah Madrasah, Fez, Morocco.

Plate 72. Special sundial said to have been built by Bahā’ al-Dīn al-‘Āmīlī in the Shah Mosque in Isfahan.

Plate 73. Seljuq astrolabe of the 6th/12th century in the Islamic and Turkish Art Museum, Istanbul.

Plate 74. Andalusian astrolabe from Seville of the 7th/13th century in the Islamic and Turkish Art Museum, Istanbul.

Plates 75 and 76. The front and back of an Egyptian astrolabe of the 7th/13th century in the Islamic and Turkish Art Museum, Istanbul.

Plate 77. Moroccan astrolabe in the Qarawiyyin Mosque school.

Plate 78. 12th/18th century Persian astrolabe in the Archaeological Museum, Tehran.

Plate 79. Isfahan is one of the few cities in the Islamic world where the tradition of astrolabe-making is still kept alive. Both real astrolabes and models of them are made by the traditional craftsmen.


Plate 81. In the Islamic and Turkish Art Museum, Istanbul.

Plate 82. In the Museum of Mevlana in Konya, Turkey.

Plate 83. From the Nisarat-nāmah, 10th/16th century MS No. M. 1365, in the Topkapı Library, Istanbul.

Plate 84. From the Shāhānshāhī-nāmah, 10th/16th century MS No. FY 1404, in the University Library, Istanbul.


Plate 88. From the Wonders of Creation by Muḥammad al-Ṭūsī, in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.
Notes to Illustrations

Chapter VII


Figure 70. From British Library MS Add.23, 391 (ff. 22v–23r).

Figures 71 and 72. From a Maghribī MS No. 98, in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Figure 73. From a treatise by Faṭḥallāh Shīrāzī, in M. A. Alvi and A. Rahman, Fatḥallāh Shīrāzī, New Delhi, India, 1968, Fig 2.


Plate 94. From the Wonders of Creation, 9th/15th century Persian MS in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Chapter VIII

Figure 74. Bath-house adjacent to the Mihrimāh Mosque.

Figure 75a. From S. H. Nasr, An Introduction to Islamic Cosmological Doctrines, p. 253.

Figure 75b. Based on M. Ullmann, 'Jābiyan writings', Die Medizin im Islam, p. 99.

Figure 76. Copyright Science Museum, London.

Figure 77. From a collection of miscellaneous, 9th/15th century MS No. B 411, in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul.

Figure 78. From a Persian medical MS in the Ahmadiyyah Library, Aleppo, Syria.

Figure 79. From Tashrih-i mānṣūrī, 13th/19th century MS No. 450, in the University Central Library, Tehran.

Figure 80. From a treatise on ophthalmology in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.

Figure 81. From the Kitāb al-taṣrīf (Book of Concession) of al-Zahrāwī in the Khudābakhsh Library, Patna, India. Photograph by Robert Harding.

Figure 82. From the Museum of the History of Medicine, Tughluqabad, Delhi, India. Photography by Robert Harding.

Figure 83. From al-Āthār al-bāqīya 'an al-qurān al-khâliyāh by al-Birūnī, 8th/14th century MS Or. 161 f6v, in Edinburgh University Library.

Figure 84. From the Farrāḥiyāt al-khāniyyah, the Turkish surgical treatise by Sharaf al-Din ibn 'Ali, 9th/15th century MS No. T.79, in the Millet Library, Istanbul.

Figure 85. In Islam animals are never 'slaughtered'; they are only allowed to be killed ritually (dhūḥ). In the case above there is no question of a particular magical act being involved; it concerns only using a hen, whose neck has just been cut ritually, to treat someone bitten by a dangerous snake. From the 9th/15th century MS No. Ahmet III 2127, in the Topkapi Library, Istanbul.

Plate 95. The hospital at Divrīq, Turkey.

Plate 96. Labābbīdī bath-house from the Mamluk period in Aleppo, Syria.

Plate 97. Timurid miniature of the School of Behzad from Jāmi’s Haft-awrang, in the Kabul Library, Afghanistan.

Plate 98. The Gānī ’Ali Khān bath-house built during the 13th/19th century in Kerman, Persia.


Plate 100. From Tashrih-i mānṣūrī, 13th/19th century MS No. 450, in the University Central Library, Tehran.

Plate 101. From the 11th/17th century Persian MS No. 14709, in the Islamic Museum, Cairo.

Plates 102 and 103. From the Tashrih-i mānṣūrī by Mānṣūr ibn Muḥammad Ḥamd, 11th/17th century Persian MS No. 5266, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Plate 104. From a treatise on ophthalmology in the Egyptian National Library, Cairo.


Plate 108. From British Library MS Or. 2784, f101v.

Plate 110. From the 7th/13th century Arabic MS No. Ahmet III 2177 from Mosul, Iraq, on Dioscorides, Materia Medica, in the Topkapı Library, Istanbul.

Plate 111. From the Museum of the History of Medicine, Tughluqabad, Delhi, India. Photograph by Robert Harding.

Chapter IX

Figure 86. Prepared by S. H. Nasr.

Figure 87. From the Museum of the History of Science, Oxford.

Figure 88. From the Turkish Da'wat nāmāy-i firdausi, 10th/16th century MS No. 268, in the University Library, Istanbul.

Plate 112. From the Museum of the History of Science, Oxford.

Plate 113. From a private collection in Isfahan.

Plate 114. In certain regions of the Islamic world there are still practising alchemists. Here one can see a Persian alchemist at work in his atelier.

Plate 115. From the Ni'matollahi Khânaqîh Library, Tehran.

Chapter X

Figure 89. The reservoir near Qayrawan in Tunis, in the 13th/9th century during the Aghlabid Dynasty.

Figure 90. The Muslims adopted the noria wheel, originally invented by the Romans, and it survives to this day, especially in the cities of Syria, such as Hama.

Figure 91. The river is spanned by several bridges which are used to this day, both for transportation and for regulating the flow of the water of the Zayandirud.

Figure 92. From Afghan Turkistan.

Plate 116. This monument, built by al-Ma'mūn and then restored in the time of the caliph al-Mutawakkil the Abbasid, shelters the graduated scale by which the rise and fall of the water of the Nile is measured.

Plate 117. The reservoir near Qayrawan in Tunis, built in the 3rd/9th century during the Aghlabid Dynasty.

Plate 118. The Minara reservoir, one of the largest existing reservoirs in Morocco.

Chapter XI

Figure 93. One of the many towers of this kind in Kerman, Persia.

Figure 94. The architecture of this edifice, situated between Na'in and Yazd, shows that with the help of the wind, which ventilates the inside space through the four towers and the closed dome, a minimum amount of precipitation results, and the water is kept remarkably cool.

Plate 119. From the Bâbur-nâmah, a 10th/16th century MS in the National Museum, Delhi, India.

Plate 120. Work being carried out in Afghanistan. Traditional methods continue to be used to this day in Persia and Afghanistan to construct and clear qanâts.

Plates 121 and 122. Two qanâts which carry water from the mountain-sides to the low plateaux in the region lying between Isfahan and Kashan. The qanât, or kariz, system from Iran is also called fogra in the Sahara.

Plate 123. Open qanât in Afghan Sistan.

Plate 124. The river is spanned by several bridges which are used to this day, both for transportation and for regulating the flow of the water of the Zayandirud.

Plate 125. In Fez, Morocco.

Plate 126. From al-Âshâr al-hâqiyyah of al-Birûni, 12th/18th century MS No. 2132, in the Majles Library, Tehran.

Plates 127 and 128. From Afghan Turkistan.

Plate 129. A wagon with wooden or iron beaters is generally used, but in some areas a threshing-board drawn over the grain by animals is preferred.

Plate 130. This little Afghan village, between Kabul and Jalalabad, is one of the many examples of this kind.

Plates 131 and 132. The cities of Kashan and Yazd, two of the oldest in Persia, are situated in one of the driest and hottest regions of the country. Therefore, in their city planning they have to make the maximum use of the little water and the great deal of air and wind that are available to them in order to make human life possible. In this view the central role of towers (hâdîgh) constructed to catch the wind is to be seen.

Plates 133 and 134. The windmills are said to be of Persian origin. They still serve, as in these examples from Khargird in Persian Khorasan, and near Herat in Afghan Khorasan, to convert easily accessible and natural means of energy for simple technological devices.

Chapter XII

Plate 135. From MS No. 1973 in the Turkish and Islamic Art Museum, Istanbul.
Glossary

Note

1. All words are of Arabic origin except where indicated otherwise.

2. The definite article al- is ignored for the purpose of alphabetical listing.

 demás (Persian), a place where there is water; a human settlement
dwär, cycles, especially of universal existence and cosmic events associated with cosmic history
ahadīyyah, singularity, a term of the school of Ibn ‘Arabi denoting the first determination of the Absolute
ahjār, see ḥajār
amlāḥ, salts, one of the classes of minerals according to Ibn Sinā
āqrābādhīn, lists of drugs; pharmacopoeia, usually concerned with compound drugs
aritmaṭiqi, a term for the science of numbers derived from the Greek
al-ārqām al-hindīyyah, Indian numbers
al-’arsh, throne; the Divine Throne
’arsh al-rahmān, the Throne of the Compassionate, the centre of the heart and the outermost heaven wherein ‘resides’ the Divinity
ātshak-i-farangi (Persian), ‘Frankish fire’, syphilis
al-‘aṭṭār, druggist
awā’il, the early (sciences), as classified by al-Āmuli and others
awākhīr, the late (sciences), as classified by al-Āmuli and others
awqāf, religious endowments, pl. of waqf, relating to institutions such as schools, libraries and other educational establishments
al-awzān wa’l-magādir, weights and measures
al-‘a’yān al-thābitah, the immutable essences
āyāt, signs or portents (of God); aspects of nature to be contemplated rather than simply analyzed

bahīr al-fārs, the Persian Sea, i.e. the Indian Ocean
bandar (Persian), port
barakah, grace, issuing directly from the Quranic revelation
barzakh, a measure of distance, derived from the Pahlavi farsang
bāṭīn, inward (aspect)
bimarīštān (Persian then Arabic), place of the sick; hospital
biyābān (Persian), a place without water; a desert

Dār al-funūn, the abode of sciences, name of a new university established in Tehran during the Qajar period where modern medicine was taught
där al-islam, the world of Islam
dhā‘ibāt, solubles, one of the classes of minerals according to Ibn Sinā
dhāt al-ḥilāq, zodiacal armillaries
dhāt al-rub‘ayn, azimuthal quadrant
dhawq, tasting (of the Truth), which with kashf leads to gnosis
dhikr, invocation (of the Name of God). By means of speech man imitates the act of creation; thus invocation plays a central role in the ‘reversal’ of the cosmogonic act and the return of man to his origin
al-din al-hanif, the primordial tradition, to which Islam in a fundamental sense returns
falak, planetary orbit
farsang (Pahlavi), a measure of distance (about four miles)
filāḥah, agriculture
fitrah, nature; the profoundest and primordial nature of man
gharib, occult (used of sciences)
ghasaq, darkness; the absence of light, and ‘matter’ in the view of the Illuminationists as opposed to the ‘substance’ of the world which is considered to be light
al-hadjarāt al-ilāhiyyat al-khamas, the Five Divine Presences, the spiritual psychic and physical worlds as depicted by Ibn ‘Arabi
hadith, saying; the Prophet’s sayings which are a commentary and extension of the teachings of the Quran. In Shi’ism, hadith includes both the sayings of the Prophet and the Imāms
hajar (pl. ahjār), stone, also the Philosophers’ Stone; one of the classes of minerals according to Ibn Sinā
hajarat al-falāsifah, the Philosophers’ Stone
hakim, wise-man or sage; the traditional physician and philosopher as well as master of most of the other traditional sciences
hammām, bath
handasah, geometry, probably derived from Pahlavi handāzah, denoting both computation and measurement of water canals or simply irrigation
handāzah, see handasah
al-harakat al-jawhariyyah, transubstantial motion, the idea developed by Mullā Ṣadrā which made motion a property of the substance of physical objects and not only of their accidents
hīd al-yihāh, prophylaxis; hygiene and public health
al-hikmat al-muta ‘āliyah, transcendent theosophy, the school dominant in Persia today whose foundation was set by Mullā Ṣadrā
himiyā’, the subjugating of souls, one of the occult sciences
hisāb al-ghubārī, ‘dust board’ computation, so called because dust was spread on a board and numbers traced on it
hisāb al-jummal, a method of computation based on the sexigesimal system using the letters of the alphabet to symbolize numbers
hisāb al-munajjim, the arithmetic of astronomers, a term used to describe the sexigesimal system
hisāb al-yad, finger computation
ikhtilāf, twitching; the interpretation of the twitching of various parts of the body and a branch of the occult sciences
ikhtiyārāt, selections; in astrology the selection of propitious moments for undertaking an important event
al-īksir, elixir
‘ilm, knowledge, considered sacred in Islam as all knowledge ultimately concerns some aspect of God or His theophanies
‘ilm al-‘add, science of numbers, later often used interchangeably with ‘ilm al-ḥisāb (q.v.)
‘ilm al-anwā‘, science of the appearance of the first light of the moon as it enters each mansion by means of which meteorological phenomena and terrestrial events were predicted
‘ilm al-falak, science of the planetary orbits; astronomy
‘ilm al-filāḥah, agriculture
‘ilm al-firāsah, physiognomy, one of the branches of the occult sciences
‘ilm al-hay‘ah, astronomy
‘ilm al-ḥisāb, science of reckoning; see also ‘ilm al-‘add
‘ilm al-hiyal, science of stratagems or ruses; that branch of science which deals with mechanical devices, gadgets, automata etc., usually related in the Muslim mind with the occult sciences and magic
al-‘ilm al-ḥudūrī, presential knowledge, sapiential wisdom or gnosis
al-‘ilm al-ḥusūlī, acquired knowledge, comprising the two classes of formal knowledge (al-‘ulūm al-naqiyyah and al-‘ulūm al-aqlīyyah, q.v.)
‘ilm khatā‘ās al-asḥā‘, science of the properties of things; being closely interwoven with mineralogy, it is not limited merely to what is measurable but is based on a vast vision wherein manifest and occult aspects and properties of things are all real and react with each other and with man in the Universe
‘ilm al-miqāt, science of fixed moments, for determining the times of prayer
‘ilm al-nabā‘, science of plants, botany
‘ilm al-nujūm, science of the stars; astronomy
al-inbiq, alembic
al-insān al-kāmil, Universal Man, in whom the fullness of the human state is realized and through whom multiplicity returns to Unity
ishrāq, illumination, name of a school founded by Suhrawardī which developed its own distinct doctrines where the very substance of the world is light and matter darkness or the absence of light
i’timād, support; a theory of projectile motion by which the motion of one object by nature engenders the motion of another after it
al-jabr, algebra, meaning originally restoration and amplification of something incomplete
jadhr, root (algebra)
al-jafr, the sacred and esoteric science connected with the numerical symbolization of the letters of the Arabic alphabet
jaliy, open (used of sciences); contrasted with the hidden or occult sciences
**Glossary**

*jism*, material; the *corpus* of the cosmologist of Antiquity, being a level of existence standing below the worlds of the Spirit and the psyche

*juz* la *yatajzza*, a particle which is indivisible; atom

 kabārit, sulphurs, one of the classes of minerals according to Ibn Sinā

 kahhabī, ophthalmologist

 kahrīz (Persian), underground canal system

 Kalām, theology

 kashf, vision, which with *dhawq* leads to gnosis

 khafī, hidden (used of sciences)

 khānaqāh (Persian), Sufi centre for initiatic and spiritual practices where esoteric and sometimes exoteric sciences are taught. *Zāwiyah* in Arabic

 khā′riq al-`ādah, that which breaks the habit, i.e. of the mind in its perception of external reality; miracles

 al-kharshīf, artichoke

 khā′rsīnī, Chinese metal; one of the seven species of metals according to al-Rāzī and others

 Khawārijī, a group opposed to `Ali and Muʿāwiyah, who for centuries opposed both Sunnis and Shi′ītes

 khilāfah, vice-gerency, i.e. of man as God’s representative on earth and the representative of all earthly creatures before God

 khulāfā′ rāshidūn, rightly guided caliphs, being the four who followed Muḥammad immediately – Abū Bakr, `Umar, `Utbān and `Ali

 al-kibrit al-ahmar, red sulphur; an alchemical term and an epithet of Ibn `Arabī

 al-kīmiyā′, alchemy

 al-kīmiyā′ al-`uzmā, the great alchemy, also name for agriculture (attributed to Hermes)

 kishwar (Persian), region, of which there are seven and into which the world is divided according to the ancient Persians

 al-kulliyāt, general principles (of medicine)

 kulliyā, a Turkish term for an educational and scientific complex

 kun, `be`, the creative act of God according to the Quran

 latā′if, subtle organs or bodies, of which there are seven in man beyond the physical body

 laylat al-mi′rāj, night of ascent, when the Prophet made his nocturnal ascent to the Divine Proximity from Jerusalem

 laylat al-qadr, the night of power, during which the Quran was revealed

 limiyā′, magic, one of the occult sciences

 mādis (Persian), streams subdivided from the Zayandihur river and flowing through the city of Isfahan, which provide water for the inhabitants

 madrasah, place for lessons; an institution associated with the mosque and which developed into a university for religious sciences but also for many of the intellectual sciences

 māl, square (algebra)

 manāzil al-qamar, the stations of the moon which are twenty-eight in number

 mandala (Sanskrit), representation of the cosmic scheme used as a contemplative aid for the adept

 masa′il, questions, being in astrology enquiries into the life and activities of someone absent

 massa, to rub or touch with the hand and possibly the origin of massage

 mawālim, kingdoms, of which there are three in the natural world

 mawsim, monsoon

 mayl, inclination, a concept developed by Ibn Sinā to explain projectile motion

 Ming-Tang, the magic square according to which the Chinese empire was divided and which is also found in early Islamic alchemy

 mi′rāj, see *laylat al-mi′rāj*

 al-mīzān, balance

 al-mu′allif al-jādīd, the new author, name given to the Turkish alchemist `Ali Bek al-Izniqi

 al-mu′allim al-thānī, the Second Teacher, referring to al-Fārābī, who gave order to and classified the sciences

 mufradāt, simples, drugs in their natural and simple state or pharmacognosy

 muhāwari, daily discourse, comprising sciences such as history, genealogy etc.

 muḥtasib, he who reckons, being a person responsible for the correct use of weights and measures in commercial transactions in the traditional Muslim city

 munaqiqūn, astronomers or astrologers and often both

 muqābahalāh, balancing, i.e. of the two sides of an equation

 murakkabāt, compounds, drugs as usually understood today in contrast to simples

 mutakallimūn, theologians

 muthallath bi′l-hikmah, thrice (great) in wisdom, Hermes Trismegistos

 *nafas*, breath; related to *nafs* (soul)

 nafas al-rahmān, the Breath of the Compassionate; in Sufi terminology, the very ‘stuff’ or substance of the Universe which ‘produces’ created beings like human breath which then produces words and sounds

 nafs, soul, the *anima* of the cosmologists of Antiquity, being a level of existence between the Spirit and physical bodies; souls are also the inner forces which govern the life patterns of the kingdoms of the natural world

 al-nafs al-nātīqah, the rational soul, being the rational faculty which distinguishes man from the animals in a fundamental and not just an accidental manner

 nākhdūd (Persian), captain of a ship

 al-nasī′, intercalation, postponement of a sacred month

 nau′, the appearance of the first light of the moon as it enters each mansion; pl. amwā′, see `ilm al-amwā′

 naẓar, glance

 al-nujūm, stars
Glossary

qahwah, coffee
qanāt, underground water system especially of Persia
al-qaws al-ḥuḍūrī, arc of presence; an appellation of some metaphysicians which along with al-qaws al-shuʿūrī (q.v.) corresponds to al-qaws al-muẓūlī (q.v.) and al-qaws al-ṣuʿūdī (q.v.)
al-qaws al-muẓūlī, arc of descent, extending from the Origin, through the various links in the chain of being, to man
al-qaws al-shuʿūrī, arc of consciousness, see al-qaws al-ḥuḍūrī
al-qaws al-ṣuʿūdī, arc of ascent, stretching from man, through the higher states of being, to God
qiblah, the direction of Mecca
al-qudamāʾ al-khamsah, the five eternals; principles of an independent cosmology developed by al-Rāzī which included time and space
al-Qurʾān al-tadwini, the recorded Quran; the written Quran
al-Qurʾān al-takwini, the Quran of creation; the created world
qwawwat al-ḥarakah, momentum

raml, sand; geomancy, originally making use of pebbles of sand although special instruments were later devised
rīḥ, wind or air; in the Galenic doctrine, through the air breathed by the organism the life-force enters the body
rīmīyāʾ, jugglery and tricks, one of the occult sciences
rīḥ, spirit; the Divine Centre of the Cosmos; that level of existence between the Origin and the Universe corresponding to the spiritus of the ancients. In medicine the spirit descends upon the mixture of humours and is the subtle body between the physical body and the force of life from the world above

al-safīḥah, a type of astrolabe in which the two stereographic projections of the circles of the equator and ecliptic were presented on the same surface
salām, peace
samaʾ, 'what is heard' being that part of natural philosophy in which the principles are discussed
al-samāʾ, the sky
samāwāṭ, the heavens
al-Ṣāniʾ, see šīnāʾ āh
shahādah, attestation, the fundamental testimony of Islam
Sharīʿah (Sacred) Law, promulgated by Islam and governing human life whereby man can live in conformity with ultimate Reality
sharʿīyyāt, the sciences of law
shayʾ, thing, used for the unknown in algebra and which became the modern x through Spanish
siddhāntas (Sanskrit), astronomical compendia, referred to by Muslims as siddhāntas
ṣifr, zero, whence cipher

silṣilah, chain; especially in Sufism and alchemy the transmission from authority to authority
simyāʾ, producing visions; one of the occult sciences
šīnāʾ āh, art and technology; the root is related to šarʿ, creation, and al-Šānīʾ, the Creator, thus binding traditional technology to forces and elements innate to the world of creation
sindhāns, see siddhāntas
stāq, a popular method of calculation still fairly prevalent in the bazaars of Persia
šarʿ, see šīnāʾ āh

tābīʿyāt, natural philosophy, which included the life and earth sciences as well as physics
tadhākhul, everything penetrating everything, being the principle of alchemy
al-tamār, oven; athanor where base metal is melted
al-tawḥīd, unity; the interrelatedness of all that is brought into being, the doctrine of Unity
tīb al-aʿimmah, medicine of the Imāms; the class of works in Shiʿism associated particularly with the fifth, sixth and eighth Imāms and complementary to prophetic medicine
al-tīb al-nabawī, prophetic medicine; that particular branch of medicine concerning the traditions of the Prophet on medicine; also called tīb al-nabi
tīb al-nabi, see al-tīb al-nabawī
tūfān, storm, whence typhoon

al-ʿulūm al-ʿaqīyyah, the intellectual sciences; knowledge acquired through the God-given intelligence of man on both the level of intellect and reason
al-ʿulūm al-gharibah, the occult sciences
al-ʿulūm al-ḥafīyyah, the hidden sciences, i.e. the occult al-ʿulūm al-naqīyyah, the transmitted sciences; knowledge acquired through the path of revealed truth which after its revelation is transmitted from one generation to the next

waṭr, bliss, see ṣawād
waqf, see pl. ṣawāf
waṭrān, consciousness, see ṣawād
ṣawād, Being, which is at once also consciousness (ṣawādān) and bliss (ṣawād), qualities present in the cosmos because the cosmos is a manifestation of the Principle

zāhir, outward (aspect)
zāwiyāt, Arabic equivalent of Persian khānaqāh (q.v.)
zij (from Sanskrit via Pahlavi), originally meant 'straight lines', was used in conjunction with astronomical tables because of lines drawn up in such works to tabulate the results of observations, hence astronomical tables
zirāʾ āh, agriculture
Select Bibliography in European Languages


Woepcke, F., L’Algèbre d’Omar Alkhayyami, Paris, 1851.


Index

al-Abbas ibn `Ali, 223; Kitāb bughayat al-jallāhin fi l-ajshārij al-muthmrah wa-l-rayyāhin (The Book on the Object of the Desire of Agriculturists concerning Fruit Trees and Odorous Herbs), 223
Abbas ibn Firnas of Cordova, 112
Abbasid, 4, 5, 82, 155
Abhavata Avicenna de Animalibus, trans. by Michael Scot, 63 (f30)
`abdallāh, 236
`abdallāh ibn Baṣṣāl, Dīgād al-filāhāh (The Agricultural Divān), 222; from Toledo, 222; Kitāb al-qād` wa`l-bayān (The Book of Conciseness and Clarity), 222
Abdelkader Nouredine, 179 (f56)
`abd al-Ghaffār Naim al-Dawlah, 223 (f17)
`abd al-Ghaniy al-Nābulusi, 207; Kitāb al-am al-malākhah fi `ilm al-filāhāh (The Book of the Graceful Guidepost concerning the Science of Agriculture), 223
Abd al-Kairim al-Jus, 4 (f4); al-Inān al-kāmil (The Universal Man), 236
`abd al-Latif al-Sa`dānī, 51 (f7)
`abd al-Majid al-Baydāwī, Muḥabbat dar `ilm-i tashrīh (A Brief Manual of Anatomy), 163
`abd al-Mu'min al-Dimyātī, 69
`abd al-Rahim al-Dakhwar, 180
`abd al-Rahmān Jāmi`, 155; Bahārīstān (The Garden of Spring), 68
Abdul-Rahman al-Khāzīni, 144; Zāj al-ṣanjrī (The Sanjari Tables), 105; Kitāb misān al-ḥikmah (The Book of the Balance of Wisdom), 143
Abd al-Rahmān al-Sūfi, Ṣa`īrī al-kawākib (Figures of the Stars), 99
Abd al-Rahmān ibn Wāfīd al-Lakhmī (known as Abencenif), 222
Abd al-Razzāq al-Jazā`īrī, 189; Kitāb kashf al-rumūs (The Book of the Unveiling of Symbols), 189
Abencenif, see `Abd al-Rahmān ibn Wāfīd al-Lakhmī
Abraham, 237 (f5); Abrahamic, 159; `Abrahamic, 75
Abū `Abdullāh al-Awsī (known as Ibn al-Raqqām al-Mursī), 223; Khulāsāt al-tibbīyāt fi muwaffat al-qawwāl l-ḥarawāt (The Synopsis of the Summary concerning Know ledge of Powers and Properties), 222–3
Abū `Abdullāh al-Battānī (known as al-Battānī and Albategnus), astronomer, 48; astronomy, 46; measurement of the earth, 48; Ptolemaic planetary theory, 106; trigonometry in astronomy, 84; Zij al-ṭabi` (The Sabaean Tables), 99
Abū `Abdullāh al-Dhahabi, 174
Abū `Abdullāh al-Idrisī, Kitāb al-rayyāl (The Book of Roger), 42
Abū `Abdullāh al-Muhānī, 82, 85
Abū `Ali ibn Sinā (known as Avicenna), 136; animal products, 68 (f8), 69; Aristotelian spheres, 106; bath, the, 157; classification of sciences, 14; cosmology, 127; De Mineralibus, 50; dhāt al-ruḥ al-ṣamā` (azimuthal quadrant), 123; faculty psychology, 161 (f4); gravity, 139; al-Hādī (Continens) influence of, 177; huṣa al-sīhah (public health), 166; Ibn al-Nafis, 181; legendary aspect of, 176; lived in Persia, 178; medical history of Persia and India, 182; Mir Abūl-Qāsim Firdorisi, 202; Mi`yar al-ṣawā`il (The Standard of the Intelligences), attrib. to alchemy, 145; music, 86 (f31); opposition to alchemy, 197; Peripatetic, 106, 200; philosopher: medical authority, 154; psychosomatic medicine, 179; Qānūn (Canon), 53, 99, 178, 179, 182, 188, 189 (f97), 190; Shifā (The Book of Healing), 50, 51 (f6), 53, 56, 63, 135, 136, 197; speed of light, 140; system of souls, 51; three kingdoms, 71; al-Urjūsāh `il-l-ṭabib (Medical Poem), 179; vision, 141; visionary recitals of, 236; works based on, 189, 190
Abū `Amr Abū al-Karīm al-Marrākushi, Rūṭāl al-ruḥātayyā/y (Treatise on Edessen Inspirations), 201
Abū Bakr, 4
Abū Bakr al-Baqillānī, Ash`arī theologian, 137
Abū Bakr ibn Samghūn (of Cordova), 187; Kitāb al-trā`a` bi aqshīl al-qudāmī`a wa-l-mubaddithin min al-ṣawā`il wa-l-muṣalafatun fa l-adawniyah al-murfadāt (The Comprehensive Book on the Views of the Ancients and Moderns among Physicians and Philosophers concerning Simple Drugs), 187
Abū Bakr ibn Tulayf, 105, 155; Hayy ibn Yaqzān (Living Son of the Azeke), 181
Abū Bakr al-Kāshānī, 188
Abū Bakr Siraj Ed-Dīn, 237 (f7)
Abū Dard, prophetic hadith, 153
Abū Hāmid al-Ghazzālī, 14, 137; Kimyā-ye `aṣā`at (Alchemy of Happiness), 201; Sufi, 162
Abū Hāmid Muḥammad al-Samarqandi, 182; Kitāb al-ṣawā`il al-alumā`t (The Book of Causes and Symptoms), 182
Abū Hanīfah al-Dinawarī, Kitāb al-nabīt (The Book of Plants), 56
Abū Hāmid al-Isfahānī, 143
Abū Ḥāmid al-Sīnānī, 62
Abū Ḥayyān al-Tawḥīdī (Baghdād), 172
Abū Ḫayr Mūsā ibn Maymūn (known as Maimonides), 181; Kitāb al-jusul (The Book of Aphorisms), 181; Kitāb tadīb `al-ṣawā`il (The Region of Health), 181
Abū ʾĪsāḥ al-Biṭrūjī, planetary theory, 106
knowledge, 54; Jābir ibn Hayyān, 56; relation to pharmacology, 185 (f4)

Botany of Theophrastus, 50, 50 (f5)

Boyer, C. B., 142 (f1)

Boyle, J. A., 81 (f2)

Browardine, Thomas, influenced by Banū Mūsā, 82

Brake, see Tycho Brahe

Brahma, in Hinduisum, 28 (f5)

Brahmagupta, Brahma-sphutasiddhānta, 11, 77, 97; Indian astronomer, 111

Khaḍjahdahakṣyakā, 97;

Mahāsiddhānta, based on the Brahma-sphutasiddhānta, 97

Brethren of Purity, 77 (f3)

Epistles, 52

Bride of Jewels and Gems of Delicacies (Arā al-sa'awāhīra wa nafas al-aqṭārib) of Abu l-Qāsim al-Qāsīnī (known as Kāshānī), 54 (f8)

Brief Manual of Anatomy, A (Mukhtasar dar'um-i tashrih) of 'Abd al-Majid al-Baydawī, 163

Browne, E. G., 172 (f26), 176 (f42)

Bruner, F., 27 (f1)

Bruno, Giordano, 199

Buddhists, philosophy of natural environment, 233 (f7); transmission of B., sutras, 12

Buffon, 62, 68 (f8)

Bukhara, Ibn Sina, 178

Bukhshī, family, 155, 175; in Iraq and Persia, 155; Jabir ibn Bukhshī, 155, 175; Jibrīs ibn Bukhshī, 175

Bugrā, see Hippocrates

Burckhardt, T., 194 (f5), 196 (f11), 202 (f4), 228 (f5)

Burlhān Nīzhān Shāhī, 162 (f7)

Bursa, Dar al-shifā' (hospital), 155

Burtt, E. A., 27 (f1)

Burzec, Kalilah wa Dimnah, 173

Butterfield, H., 27 (f1)

al-Būznā, see Abu l-Wafā' al-Buznā

Buzurg ibn Shahriyār

Rāmānurmi, Wonders of India (Arā ib al-ḥind-i), 40, 62

Byzantine, 210, agriculture, 221; fall of Alexandria, 10; Hārūn al-Rashid, 175; hospital, 155; Kassanos Bassos, 221; scholars translating, 109; zoology, 60

Byzantium, agriculture, 209

Caesarean, operation, 167

Cairo, 182; 'Abdallāh ibn Basāmil, 222; al-Azhār, 175; 'Ali ibn Ridwān, 179; astronomy, 101; Hājī Bāshā Khird al-Āyūdīnī, 184; Muqqātāt observatory (Ibn Yūnis), 112

calculus, integral, 82; use by Muslim scientists, 132
calendar, agricultural, 222; of Cordova, 96, 97, 95 (f3), 96, 105; Julian, 95 (f5); Persian (Yardigir), 97 (f8); qiblah, direction of, 133

calligraphy, 44
carpoogy, 204; illustrations, 66;

spirituality, 204
camera obscura, Ibn al-Haytham, 142

Campbell, D. E. H., 172 (f26)

Cānukya (Aryan Śaṅkara) on poisons, 173

"Cānamuṣali," see Amārā dawāsīq

Canon of Medicine, The (Al-Quānī fi-l-tibb) of Abu 'Ali ibn Sinā, 53, 99, 197, 179, 182, 188, 187 (f19), 190

Canon of Physicians and Laws of Friends, The (Al-Quānī al-aṭṭabbā wa-nāmis al-aṭṭabāh) of Madyan al-Qawṣīnī, 189

Caraka samhitā of Caraka (Sahārīk al-sīrāh), 173

Caron, N., 86 (f31)
cartoegraphy, 43

Catalan, Canon of Medicine by Ibn Sīnā, 178

"Categories," branch of logic, 15
cateptics, 181
causality, defence by Muslims, 173; perception of 138
caterization, in surgery, 168; al-Zahrāwī, 178
celestial globe, Naples museum, 145 (f28)

Cerulli, E., 31 (f9)

Chaghamīn, see Mahmūd ibn 'Umar al-Chaghamīn, Mahmūd ibn Muhammed Chaghamīn

Channing, J., 177 (f47)

Chauduri, H. K., 184 (f40)

Chaucer, Conclusions of the Astrallobe, 120

chemical processes, 147

chemistry, 194; inro-chemistry, 200

China, alchemy in, 197, 204; early scientific contact, 11; Islamic influence on C.'s astronomy, etc., 134 (f42); Islamic travellers to, 40, 43, 44; Reports on China, 40; Treatise on China, 44

Chinese, alchemy, 197; astronomer Fao-Mun-Jīn, 105; astrology, 134; "chinese" metal (khārṣāni), 200; harmonic use of invention, 150; Il-Khānīd Kompandem, 182; influencing Islam, 207; Islam added to C., astronomy, 134; medicine, 123; medicine linked to philosophy, etc., 159 (f9); Ming-Tang alchemy, 195; origin of alchemy, Chīn-Jīn, 197 (f14); rendering Buddhist sutras into, 133; scientific exchange, 182; scientific tradition, 11; Yin-Yang cosmology, 195

Christopher, 237 (f5)

Christendom, 86

Christian, alchemy, before C., 192; 'Ali ibn 'Īsā, 167; Clement of Alexandria, 88; Harranians independent of, 11; history, 10; Ibn Butتīn, 179; Ibn Tīmīdī, 179; lIsāq ibn Butnān, 177, 178, 179, 183; Ibn al-Aswānī

Concerning Treatise, The (Kitāb al-muqām) of Abu 'Umar ibn Hājiāj al-Isbālī, 222

Cooramaswamy, A. K., 71 (f41), 145 (f27), 231 (f9)

Coon, C., 228 (f5)

Copernicus, 84; not inventor of secular, 84; used Islamic planetary developments, 109

Corbin, H., 37 (f1), 138 (f1), 195 (f8), 199 (f22), 237 (f5)

Cortova, Abu l-Qāsim al-Zahrāwī, 177; calendar of, 96; early astronomer, 'Abbās ibn Firmān, 112; medical excellence in, 181; meridian of, 99; Spanish/Arabic works on pharmacology, 187

Corpus Hermeticum of Hermes, 198
cosmography, al-Qazwini, 63;

background for sciences, 36
cosmology, aim to reveal the One, 31; Aristotelian, 132; astrological symbolism, 127; Chinese, 195; harmony of man and environment, 239; Hindu, 195; Metacomic Reality, 28, 235, 237; microcosm, the 237; numbers and letters, 36; related to Islamic revelation, 28; related to medicine, 159; town-planning related to, 228; traditional Islamic, 27; Turkish, 201

Cossin, S., 194 (f5)

Creation of the Spheres (Insakh al-da'awār) of Ibn 'Arabi, 236

Critchlow, Keith, 88 (f33)

Crombie, A., 136 (f5)

Cumont, F., 197 (f15)

Cuvier, 68 (f38)

Damascus, clock of, 145;

Dā'ud al-Anṭākī, 184; Dīyā' al-Dīn ibn al-Baytar, 188; al-Fārābī, 177; major hospitals, 155, 180

al-Dāmirī, see Kamāl al-Dīn al-Dāmirī

Danzeppahuzh, M. T., 200 (f32), 201 (f39)

Daniel, Prohet, 207

Dante, Divine Comedy, 31 (f9); 134

Dār al-funūn, 183

Dār al-islām, 218, 234; earliest part of, 5; geographical variations in, 218; homon

islamicus, 234; no early Chinese tradition, 11; religious minorities within, 12; science of geography, 36; truly international science, 9; vast knowledge of geography, 38; "World of Islam," 4

Dār al-shifā', see Bursa

Dastīr al-ilā' (Rules of Treatment) of Sulṭān 'Ali Gūnālī, 183

Data of Euclid, 77

Dāristān-ī dinik (Pahlavi), 53

Dū' al-Andalus, minerology, 54; study of animals, 69; Tadhkhirah āl-ālābī wa-l'-ajāb li'l'-ajāb al-wājib (The Treasury of the People of Understanding and Compendium of the Wonder of Wonders), 187

Dāvin for the Weak-Sighted (Subh al-šāhīl) of al-Qalqashandi, 63

De Anima of Aristotle, 50
Academy of Islamic Science
Tehran, Iran